

# HANDBOOK



RIFTER

Downloaded from [thelostmanual.org](http://thelostmanual.org)



PEUGEOT



## Access to the Handbook



 App Store

 ANDROID APP ON Google play



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the 'MY PEUGEOT' section or at the following address:  
<http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

# Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot Rifter.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

## Key

 Safety warning

 Additional information

 Contributes to the protection of the environment

 Left-hand drive vehicle

 Right-hand drive vehicle

 Location of the equipment/button described with a black zone



## Key

This key will enable you to identify the special features of your vehicle:



5 seats



7 seats

Overview					
Labels	4	Steering wheel adjustment	53	Lighting control stalk	81
Instruments and controls	5	Mirrors	53	Automatic headlamp dipping	84
Eco-driving	8	General recommendations for the seats	55	Cornering lighting	86
Eco-driving	8	Front seats	56	Headlamp beam height adjustment	87
		Rear bench seat (row 2)	58	Wiper control stalk	87
		Rear seats (row 2)	59	Changing a wiper blade	89
		Rear seats (row 3)	61	Automatic wiping	89
Instruments	1	Adjusting the height of the head restraint	62		
Instrument panel	11	Interior fittings	63		
Warning and indicator lamps	13	2-position luggage cover parcel shelf (removable)	69		
Indicators	28	Luggage cover (7-seat)	69		
Lighting dimmer	33	Warning triangle	70		
Trip computer	34	Heating	70		
Setting the time and date	35	Manual air conditioning	71		
Access	2	Dual-zone automatic air conditioning	71	General safety recommendations	91
Key	37	Recirculation of interior air	73	Emergency or assistance call	92
Unlocking	38	Front demist – defrost	74	Hazard warning lamps	93
Locking	40	Heated windscreens	74	Horn	93
Back-up control(s)	42	Rear screen demist – defrost	75	Electronic stability control (ESC)	94
Central locking/unlocking	46	Rear heating – air conditioning	75	Advanced Grip Control	97
Anti-intrusion security	46	Additional heating/ventilation	76	Hill Assist Descent Control	98
Side-hinged doors	47	Advice	79	Seat belts	100
General recommendations for the sliding side doors	47	Courtesy lamps	80	Airbags	103
Alarm	49			Child seats	106
Electric windows	51			Deactivating the front passenger airbag	107
				"ISOFIX" mountings	114
				Recommended ISOFIX child seats	115
				i-Size child seats	117
				Advice	118
				Manual child lock	119
				Electric child lock	119

Driving	6	Practical information	7	Technical data	9
Driving advice	120	Compatibility of fuels	178	Dimensions	216
Starting/switching off the engine	121	Fuel tank	179	Engine technical data and towed loads	217
Anti-theft protection	126	Diesel misfuel prevention	180	Engines and towed loads – PETROL	220
Manual parking brake	126	Snow chains	180	Engines and towed loads – DIESEL	222
Electric parking brake	126	Towing device	181	Identification markings	224
Hill start assist	130	Towing device with quickly detachable towball	182		
5-speed manual gearbox	130	Towing devices	183		
6-speed manual gearbox	131	Energy economy mode	184		
Automatic gearbox	131	Roof bars/Roof rack	184		
Gear shift indicator	135	Bonnet	185		
Stop & Start	135	Load reduction mode	185		
Speed Limit recognition and recommendation	138	Engine	186		
Speed limiter	142	Checking levels	186	Bluetooth audio system	
Programmable cruise control	144	Checks	189	PEUGEOT Connect Radio	
Adaptive cruise control	147	AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)	191	PEUGEOT Connect Nav	
Memorising speeds	154	Advice on care	194		
Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance	155				
Active Lane Departure Warning System	158	In the event of a breakdown			
Blind Spot Detection	161	Running out of fuel (Diesel)	195		
Fatigue detection system	164	Tool kit	195		
Parking sensors	165	Temporary puncture repair kit	196		
Visiopark 1	168	Spare wheel	199		
Park Assist	170	Changing a bulb	203		
Under-inflation detection	175	Changing a fuse	209		
		12 V battery	211		
		Towing	214		

## 8

### Access to additional videos

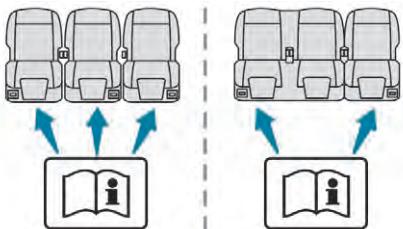


[bit.ly/helpPSA](http://bit.ly/helpPSA)

## Labels



General recommendations for the seats section.



Additional heating/ventilation section.



Deactivating the front passenger airbag section.



ISOFIX mountings and child seats section.



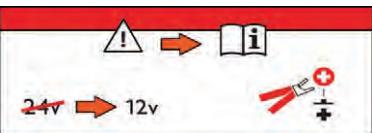
Manual child lock section.



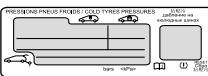
Electric parking brake section.



Bonnet and Changing a bulb sections

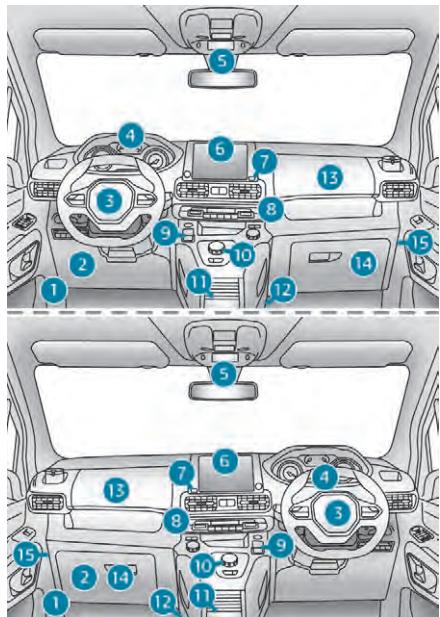


12 V battery section.



Temporary puncture repair kit and Spare wheel sections.

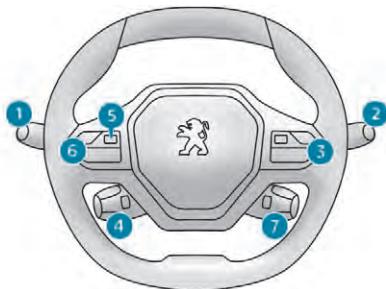
## Instruments and controls



<b>1</b>	
Bonnet release	
<b>2</b>	
Dashboard fuses	

<b>3</b>	Horn
<b>4</b>	Instrument panel
<b>5</b>	<p>Courtesy lamp</p> <p>Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag</p> <p>Panoramic roof blind control</p> <p>Interior rear view mirror</p> <p>Surveillance mirror</p> <p>Emergency and assistance call buttons</p>
<b>6</b>	<p>Monochrome screen with audio system</p> <p>Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav</p>
<b>7</b>	USB socket
<b>8</b>	Heating
	Manual air conditioning
	Automatic dual-zone air conditioning
	Front demisting – defrosting
	Rear screen demisting – defrosting
<b>9</b>	Electric parking brake "START/STOP" button
<b>10</b>	Gearbox
<b>11</b>	12 V socket
<b>12</b>	230 V accessory socket
<b>13</b>	<p>Glove box</p> <p>USB socket (inside the glove box)</p>
<b>14</b>	Glove box
<b>15</b>	Deactivation of the front passenger airbag (on the side of the glove box, with the door opened)

## Steering mounted controls



- 1 External lighting/direction indicators control stalk  
Voice recognition activation button
- 2 Wiper/screenwash/trip computer control stalk
- 3 Controls to select the multimedia source (**SRC**), to manage music (**LIST**) and to manage phone calls ("telephone" print)
- 4 Controls for speed limiter/cruise control/adaptive cruise control

- 5 Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
- 6 Voice control  
Volume adjustment
- 7 Audio system setting controls

## Side switch panel

Diagram illustrating side switch panel controls:

- Manual headlamp beam height adjustment (represented by a headlight icon with a height scale and a '1' marker)
- DSC/ASR systems (represented by a car icon with an orange switch)
- Stop & Start (represented by a car icon with an orange switch and a 'A' symbol)

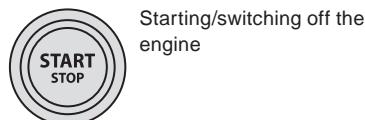
Diagram illustrating side switch panel controls:

- Parking sensors (represented by a car icon with an orange switch and a 'P' symbol)
- Additional heating/ventilation (represented by a fan icon with an orange switch)
- Active Lane Departure Warning System (represented by a car icon with an orange switch and a 'V' symbol)
- Under-inflation detection (represented by a tire icon with an orange switch)
- Electric child lock (represented by a child icon inside a lock symbol with an orange switch)
- Heated windscreens (represented by a wavy windshield icon with an orange switch)

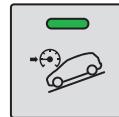
## Control on the driver's door



Electric child lock



Starting/switching off the engine



Hill Assist Descent



Eco mode



Hazard warning lamps



Electric parking brake

## Central switch panel



Locking/unlocking from the inside



Advanced Grip Control



# Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

## Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

## Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

## Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items the of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDI Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with the regulations.

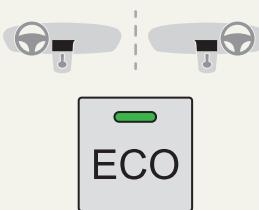
When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

## Eco mode

This mode allows you to optimise heating and air conditioning settings to reduce fuel consumption.

### Activation/Deactivation



To deactivate or activate this mode, press this button.

The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is activated.

## Eco-coaching

This function provides the driver with advice and information, in order to help adopt a more economical and environmentally friendly driving style.

It takes into account parameters such as optimisation of braking, acceleration management, gear changes, tyre inflation, use of the heating/air conditioning functions, etc.

### With PEUGEOT Connect Radio



In the "Applications" menu, select "Eco-coaching".

### With PEUGEOT Connect Nav



In the "Applications" menu, then the "Vehicle Apps" tab, select "Eco-coaching".

### Display in the instrument panel



By selecting the "Eco-coaching" tab of the central display in the matrix instrument panel, you can assess your driving in real time with the braking and acceleration indicator.

### Display on the touch screen

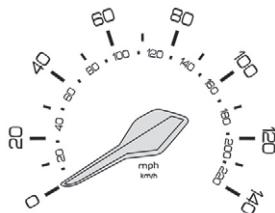
The 4 "Trip", "Air conditioning", "Maintenance" and "Driving" tabs provide you with advice in order to optimise your driving style.

Information relating to the driving style can also appear in real time.

The "Report" tab assesses your driving style on a daily basis and gives an overall score over the entire week.

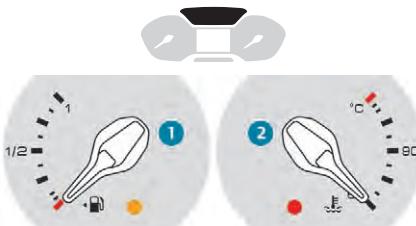
You have the option, at any time, to reset this report by pressing "Reset".

## Instrument panel Speedometer



Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

## Indicators with LCD text or matrix instrument panel



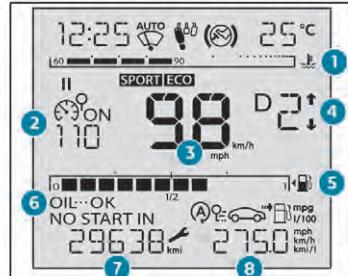
1. Fuel gauge.
2. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.

## Display screen



**i** When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

## With LCD symbols instrument panel



1. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
2. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear shift indicator.  
Gear with an automatic gearbox.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).  
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

## With LCD text instrument panel



1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
2. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear shift indicator.  
Gear with an automatic gearbox.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km), trip distance recorder (miles or km), message displays, etc.

## With matrix instrument panel



1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
2. Gear shift indicator.  
Gear with an automatic gearbox.
3. Display area: alert or function state message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).  
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

## Control buttons



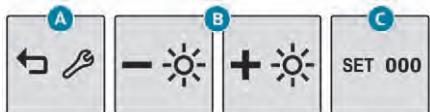
## With LCD symbols instrument panel



- General lighting dimmer.  
After a long press on **SET**: change the set time values and the units.
- Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Resetting the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).  
After a long press: change the set time values and the units.

## With LCD text instrument panel

### With matrix instrument panel



A. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.

Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.

B. General lighting dimmer.

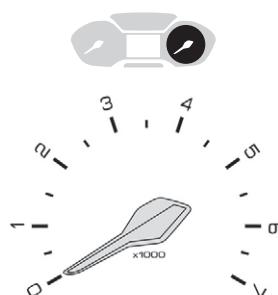
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.

C. Resetting the trip distance recorder (long press).

Resetting the service indicator.

Depending on version: enter the configuration menu and confirm a choice (short press).

## Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

## Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

### Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

## When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

## Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

## Where a Resetting lamp remains lit

The references (1), (2) and (3) in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2):** Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>Red warning/indicator lamps</b>			
<b>STOP</b>	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault. Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system. Carry out (1) and then (2).
	<b>Brakes</b>	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly. Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
 +		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty. Carry out (1) and then (2).
	<b>Parking brake</b>	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

**(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>Maximum coolant temperature</b>	Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version).	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the coolant, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
 <b>Battery charge</b>	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).
 <b>Power steering</b>	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
 <b>Seat belt not fastened/unfastened</b>	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).	
 <b>Door open</b>	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access. An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the tailgate or the tailgate screen is still open (depending on version).	Close the access. If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand side-hinged door, its opening will <b>not</b> be indicated by this warning lamp.
 <b>Electric parking brake</b>	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>Orange warning/indicator lamps</b>			
	<b>Automatic functions (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated.
	<b>Automatic application (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually. Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
	<b>Malfunction (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is not operating at maximum efficiency and cannot ensure parking the vehicle in complete safety in all situations. Make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, with P selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	<b>Malfunction (with electric parking brake)</b>	Flashing, when the vehicle is started.	The parking brake has not been properly released. Carry out (1) and try to completely release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Low fuel level</b> Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message. The audible warning and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards zero.	When it first comes on, there remains <b>less than 6 litres</b> of fuel in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. <b>Never drive until completely empty</b> , this could damage the emissions and injection systems.
	<b>Presence of water in Diesel filter</b> Fixed (with LCD symbols instrument panel).	The Diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system: carry out (2) without delay.
	<b>Engine diagnostic system</b> Flashing.  Fixed.	The engine management system has a fault.  The emissions control system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) <b>without fail</b> .  The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	Fixed.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (3).
	Fixed.	A major engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>Diesel engine pre-heating</b>	<p>Fixed. The period of illumination depends on the climatic conditions.</p>	<p>The ignition is on.</p>	<p>Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the minor engine fault lamp goes off again, then start the engine.</p>
 <b>Under-inflation</b>	<p>Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.</p>	<p>The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.</p>	<p>Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.</p>
	<p>Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.</p>	<p>The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.</p>	<p>As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).</p>
 <b>Anti-lock braking system (ABS)</b>	<p>Fixed.</p>	<p>The anti-lock braking system has a fault.</p>	<p>The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).</p>
 <b>Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake</b>	<p>Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.</p>	<p>The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.</p>	
	<p>Flashing.</p>	<p>The system is operating.</p>	<p>The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.</p>
	<p>Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.</p>	<p>The system has a fault.</p>	<p>Carry out (3).</p>
 <b>Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake</b>	<p>Fixed.</p>	<p>The system has a fault.</p>	<p>If these lamps come on after the engine is switched off and restarted, carry out (3).</p>

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>Particle filter (Diesel)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	The particle filter is beginning to saturate.	As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the lamp goes off.
	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.	The minimum level of the additive reservoir has been reached.	Top up as soon as possible: carry out (3).
 <b>Airbags</b>	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
 <b>Front passenger airbag (ON)</b>	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.	<b>In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!</b>
 <b>Front passenger airbag (OFF)</b>	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "OFF" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
 <b>Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)</b>	Fixed.	The system is deactivated.	Press the button to reactivate it. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 30 mph (50 km/h).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)</b>	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
	Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 <b>Hill start assist</b>	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 <b>Emergency brake anomaly (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, use manual release.
 <b>Active Lane Departure Warning System</b>	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	
	Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	<b>Active Lane Departure Warning System</b>	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	<b>AdBlue®(with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)</b>	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> , or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDI Euro 6.2)</b>	On for around 30 seconds every time the vehicle is started, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km).	Top up the AdBlue® <b>as soon as possible</b> , or carry out (3).
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 60 miles (100 km).	You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> , or carry out (3).
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
    	<b>SCR emissions control system</b>  Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to <b>avoid running out of fuel</b> .
	AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To restart the engine, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	<b>Service</b>	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message 'Parking brake fault'.	Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.	Carry out (2).
		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	Service is overdue.	Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	<b>Malfunction (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Malfunction (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	<p>The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.</p> <p>When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the fault lamp comes on in the instrument panel.</li> </ul> <p>If this procedure does not work, make your vehicle safe:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Park on a level surface.</li> <li>☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.</li> <li>☞ With an automatic gearbox, select P, then put the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.</li> </ul> <p>Then carry out (2).</p>
	<b>Malfunction of the braking systems (with Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB))</b>	Fixed.	Carry out (3) quickly.
	<b>Malfunction of the airbags or pyrotechnic pretensioning systems (with Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB))</b>	Fixed.	Carry out (3) quickly.
	<b>Rear foglamp</b>	Fixed.	The lamp is on.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>Green warning/indicator lamps</b>			
	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
	<b>Hill Assist Descent Control</b>	Fixed.	The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).
		Flashing.	The function is starting regulation.
	<b>Eco mode</b>	Fixed.	ECO mode is active.
	<b>Automatic wiping</b>	Fixed.	Automatic front wiping is activated.
	<b>Front foglamps</b>	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.
	<b>Sidelamps</b>	Fixed.	The lamps are on.
	<b>Direction indicators</b>	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.
	Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated via the touch screen (Vehicle/Driving menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

### Blue warning/indicator lamps

	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
---	---------------------	--------	-------------------	--

### Black/white warning/indicator lamps

	Foot on the brake	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position P.
	Foot on the clutch	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	Automatic front wiping is activated.	

(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Indicators

### Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.

- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

**i** The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
 <b>Service spanner</b>	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 1,860 miles (3,000 km) and 620 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
	Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
 <b>Service spanner flashing</b>	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

### Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

- ☛ Switch off the ignition.



- ☛ Press and hold this button.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☛ Release the button when =0 is displayed; the spanner disappears.

**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

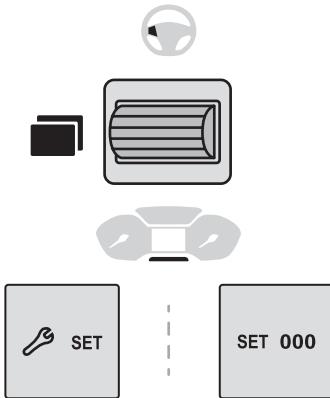
### Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

## Instrument panel display screen



**When stationary**, use the left-hand dial on the steering wheel or the "SET" button in the instrument panel to navigate through the menus to configure certain vehicle settings.

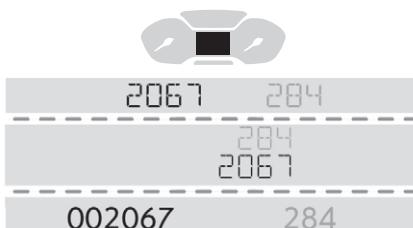
### Operation of the dial:

- Press: go to the **Main menu**, confirm the selection.
- Rotate (other than in a menu): scroll through the list of active functions available.
- Rotate (in a menu): move up or down in the menu.

## Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

### Total distance recorder

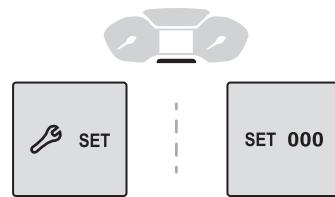


It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

### Trip distance recorder

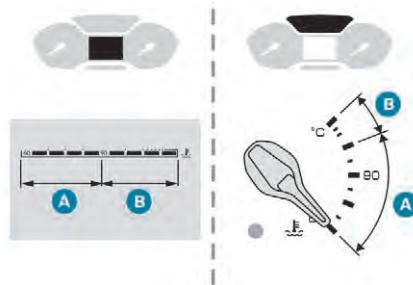
It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

## Resetting the trip recorder



- ☞ With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.

## Engine coolant temperature



With the engine running, when the needle or bar graph (depending on version) is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature of the engine coolant is correct,

- in zone **B**, the temperature of the engine coolant is too high; the maximum temperature and central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**  
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.  
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☛ wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,
- ☛ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☛ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☛ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

## Engine oil level indicator

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

## Oil level correct



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

## Low oil level



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

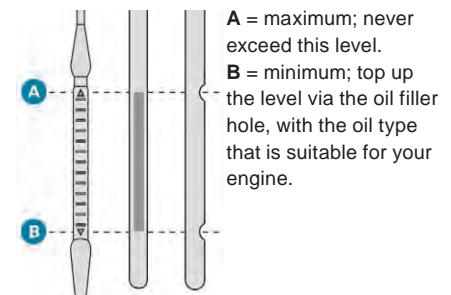
## Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Dipstick

**i** To locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap for the **Diesel engine**, refer to the corresponding section.



**A** = maximum; never exceed this level.  
**B** = minimum; top up the level via the oil filler hole, with the oil type that is suitable for your engine.

## AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDI Diesel versions.

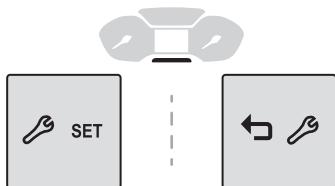
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

## In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

**!** The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

### Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically.



Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

## With 1.6 BlueHDI (Euro 6.1) engine

**Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 185 miles (300 km) until the fluid level has been topped up.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

### Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

## Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, along with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

**!** To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

**i** For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDI engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

### With 1.5 BlueHDI (Euro 6.2) engine

**Range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)**



Each time the vehicle is started, this warning lamp comes on for about 30 seconds, accompanied by the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles (km)") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

These messages are accompanied by the recommendation not to top up with more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

### Range between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 60 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty, otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine.

### Remaining range less than 60 miles (100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

### Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

**!** To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

**i** For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDI engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

### In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

**!** An engine starting inhibition system is activated automatically after you have driven a further 685 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

## During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after around 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message

(e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 300 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

## Starting prevented



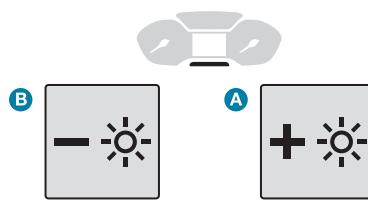
Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

**!** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Lighting dimmer

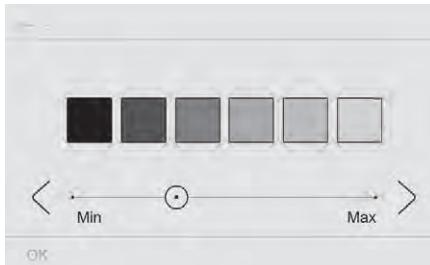
Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel to suit the exterior light level.



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the vehicle's ambient lighting or button **B** to reduce it.

Release the button when the desired level is reached.

## Touch screen lighting dimmer



- ☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

**i** The brightness can be set differently for day mode and night mode.

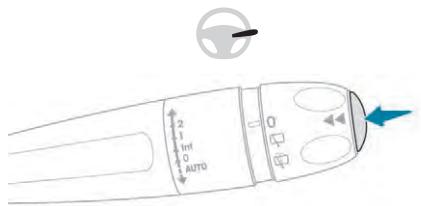
## Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

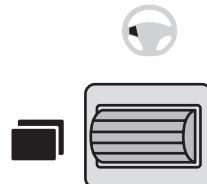
## Information display

It is displayed successively.

- Trip mileage.
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Information from the speed limit recognition system.



- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



- ☞ Press the dial on the steering wheel.

## Reset trip

The reset will be performed when the trip is displayed.

- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, for more than two seconds.
- ☞ Press the dial on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.

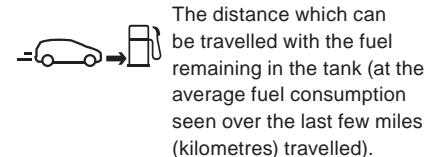


- ☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

## A few definitions...

### Range

(miles or km)



**i** This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Current fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)

**Ø**  Calculated over the last few seconds.  


**i** This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

## Average fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)

  Calculated since the last trip computer reset.  


## Average speed

(mph or km/h)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

## Distance travelled

(miles or km)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

## Stop & Start time counter

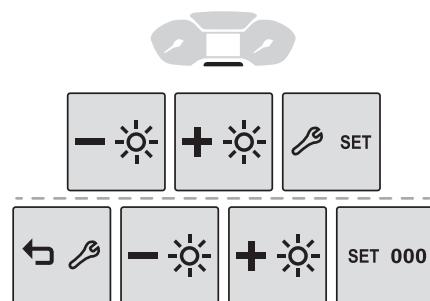
 **A** (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)  


If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Setting the time and date

### Without audio system



You can adjust the date and time in the instrument panel display.

**SET 000**  Hold this button down.

 **SET**

   Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

**SET 000**  Press this button briefly to confirm.

 **SET**

   Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

## With audio system

- ☞ Press the  **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or the **Back** button to cancel.

## With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select "System configuration".
- ☞ Select "Date and time".
- ☞ Select "Date" or "Time".
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with "OK".

## With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper or side banner of the touch screen.
- ☞ Press the **OPTIONS** button to go to the secondary page.



- ☞ Select "Setting the time-date".
- ☞ Select the "Date:" or "Time" tab.
- ☞ Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with "OK".

## Additional settings

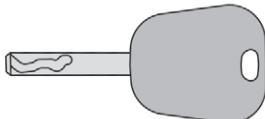
You can choose:

- To change the time zone.
- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To activate or deactivate the summer time management function (+1 hour).
- To activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Key

### Conventional key



The key allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock.

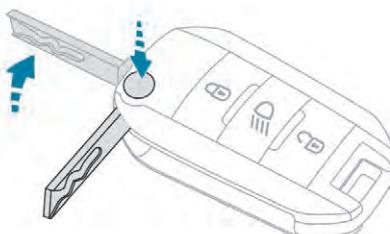
It also allows the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off.

### Remote control key

It allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

**i** The remote control buttons are not active when the ignition is switched on.

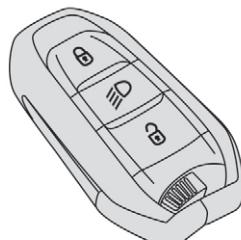
### Unfolding/folding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

**!** If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

### Keyless Entry and Starting

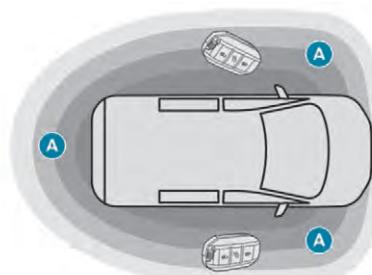


This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle from a distance.

Downloaded from thelostmanual.org

It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

### Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



This allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the remote control on your person.

**i** In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors. For more information on **Starting/switching off the engine** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The unlocking, locking or deadlocking does not take place:

- if the ignition is on,
- if one of the doors or the boot is still open,
- if the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked (with the remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting), if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door has been opened.

And if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be reactivated (with interior volumetric monitoring, even if this had been deactivated).

**i** The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors by the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your Keyless Entry and Starting remote control with you, even for a short period.

Be aware of the risk of theft when the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control is in the recognition zone with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the charge of the battery in the remote control, the "hands-free" functions go into extended stand-by after 21 days without use.

To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the remote control at the reader.

## Unlocking

**i** Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

## With the key

**☞** To completely unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.  
**☞** Then pull the handle to open the door. If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

## With the remote control



**☞** Press this button to unlock the vehicle.



If fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button opens the windows. The window stops when you release the control.

## With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



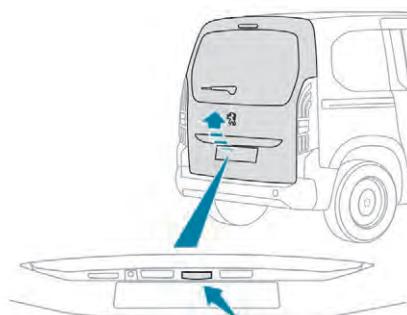
- To unlock the **vehicle**, with the remote control on your person and in recognition zone A, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors, manual sliding side doors or side-hinged doors).
- Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

## With side-hinged doors



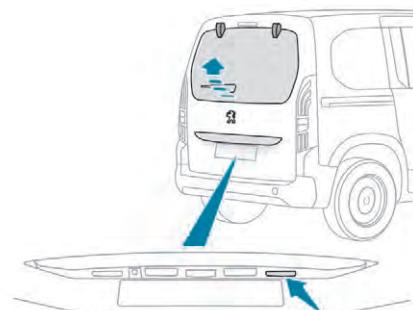
- To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone A, pass your hand behind the handle of the side-hinged door.
- Then pull the handle to open it.

## With tailgate



- To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone A, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control.
- Raise the tailgate.

## With an opening rear screen in the tailgate



- To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone A, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control.

The screen partly opens.

- Raise it to open it.

## Locking

! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

! If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, the locking/deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

### With the key

☞ To lock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear of the vehicle.

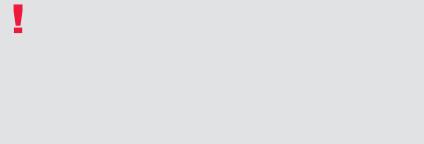
### With the remote control



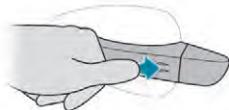
☞ To lock the vehicle, press this button.



If fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button closes the windows. The window stops when you release the control.

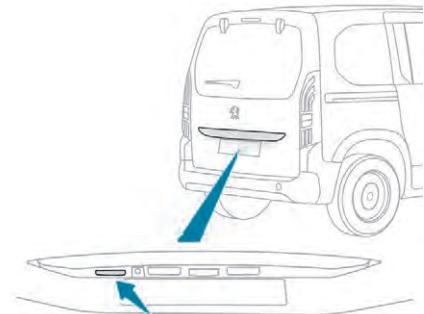
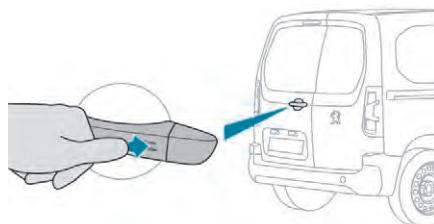


### With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone A, press with a finger or thumb on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.

### With side-hinged doors/tailgate



☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone A, press the left-hand door/tailgate locking control.



If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking controls allows the windows to be closed. If you release the control, the window stops.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your remote control with you, even for a short period.



If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged doors):

- vehicle stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

## Deadlocking



! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

## With the key

- To deadlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear.
- Then **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

## With the remote control



- To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
- Then **within five seconds after locking**, press this button again.

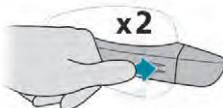
**i** Depending on the version you have, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.



**+3s**

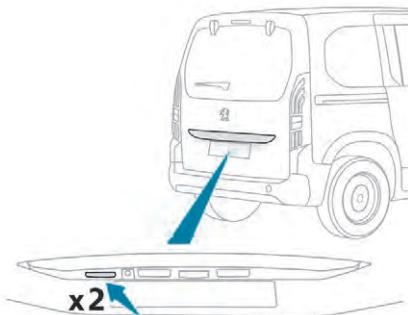
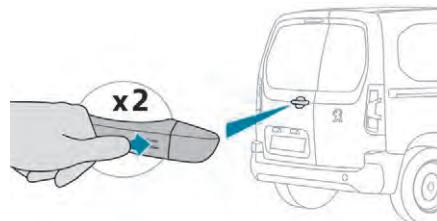
If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking controls allows the windows to be closed. If you release the button, the window stops.

## With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



- To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone A, press with a finger or thumb on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds**.

## With side-hinged doors/tailgate



- To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone A, press the left-hand door/tailgate locking control.
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must have been locked for more than five seconds.



- ☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

## Remote operation of lighting



A short press on this button allows you to switch on the lighting from a distance (lighting the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).

A second press on this button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.



In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

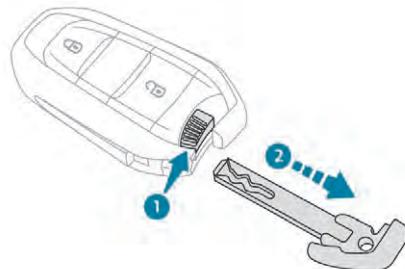
## Back-up control(s)

If the battery is flat, attempt to lock/unlock the vehicle as usual. If this does not work, use the mechanical systems described below.

Also use these systems to mechanically lock/unlock the doors in the event of:

- central locking system failure,
- remote control battery discharged,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

## Where is the integral key of the Keyless Entry and Starting?



- ☞ Pull and hold button 1, to extract the integral key 2.

### Locking of the vehicle

- ☞ Insert the integral key in the driver's door lock, then turn it to the rear.

### Unlocking of the vehicle

- ☞ Insert the integral key in the driver's door lock, then turn it to the front.

**i** If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated/activated on unlocking/locking the vehicle.

Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key again within five seconds of locking.

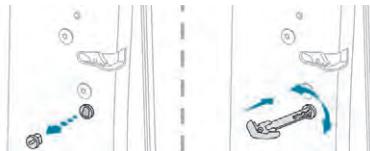
**i** If unlocking using the key in the lock takes place after **locking using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting**, all of the accesses are unlocked.

If unlocking using the key in the lock takes place after **locking using the key**, only the doors are unlocked (front doors, sliding side doors). The side-hinged doors and the tailgate are not unlocked. Switching on the ignition unlocks them.

## Locking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

With a **sliding side door or side-hinged doors**, if fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not activated.

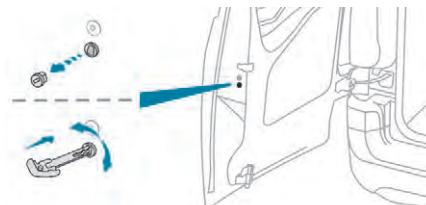
☞ Open the door.



Front passenger door



Sliding side door



Side-hinged doors

- ☞ Remove the cap located on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the integral key into the latch (without forcing) and then **turn** the assembly.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the door(s) and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked correctly.

## Unlocking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

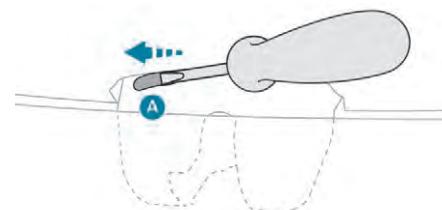
☞ Use the interior opening handle.

or

☞ With **side-hinged doors**, insert the integral key in the (left-hand) door lock, then turn it.

**i** For more information on the **Child lock on a sliding side door or side-hinged doors**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Unlocking of the tailgate



- ☞ From the interior of the vehicle, introduce a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

## Changing the battery

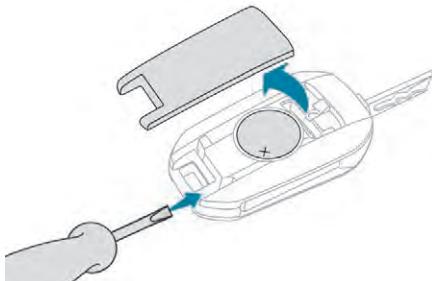


If the battery is flat, you will be informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The replacement battery is available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

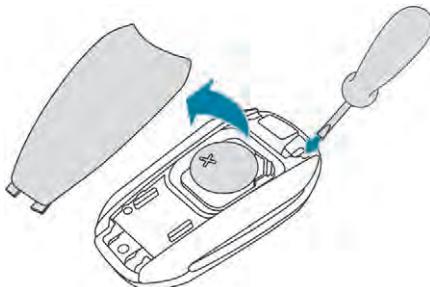
### With remote control key

Battery type: CR 1620/3 volts.



### With Keyless Entry and Starting

Battery type: CR 2032/3 volts.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its compartment.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.

For more information on Reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.



Do not throw away the remote control batteries, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

Downloaded from [thelostmanual.org](http://thelostmanual.org)

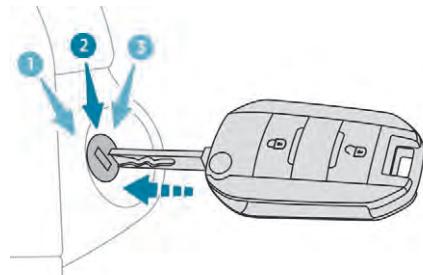
### Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### With remote control key

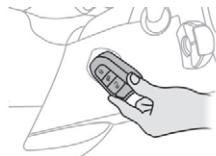


- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position 2 (Ignition).
- ☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

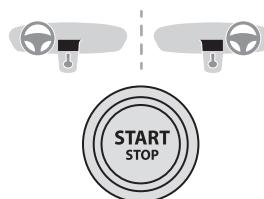
The remote control is fully operational again.

## With Keyless Entry and Starting

- Place the key in the lock to open your vehicle.



- Place the remote control against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.



- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **"START/STOP"** button.

The remote control is fully operational again.

### ! Lost keys, remote control

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer, taking with you the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

### Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You may stop it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised. The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

### Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

### Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting remote control may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

### Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

Do not forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

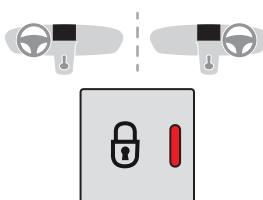
### When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

## Central locking/unlocking

This function allows the doors to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.



### **i** When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door handles to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

### Manual mode



- ☞ Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

**i** If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not function. This is signalled by a mechanical noise from the locks.

If the boot is open, only the locking of the other doors is carried out. The indicator lamp in the button remains off.

**i** When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

**i** The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more accesses.

### Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and tailgate as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Operation

If one of the doors or the tailgate is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

## Activation/Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

With the ignition on, press the central locking button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency.

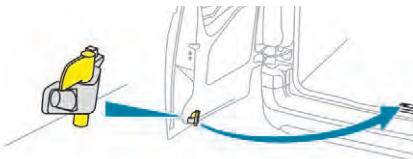
### Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear. Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

## Side-hinged doors

### Keeping the left-hand door closed with the right-hand door open



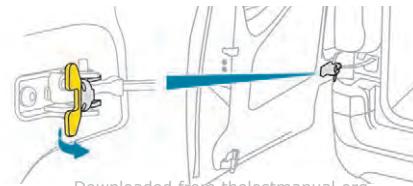
**!** It is possible to drive with the right-hand door open, to enable the transportation of long loads.

The **left-hand** door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.

This closed door must not be used to retain loads.

Driving with the right-hand door open is a special dispensation. Please comply with the usual safety instructions on how to warn other drivers.

### Opening to approximately 180°



Downloaded from thelostmanual.org

If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

## General recommendations for the sliding side doors

**!** The doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.

For your safety and for that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open. Always check that it is safe to operate the door and, in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.

The audible warning, illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message in the multifunction screen are there to remind you. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to deactivate these warnings.

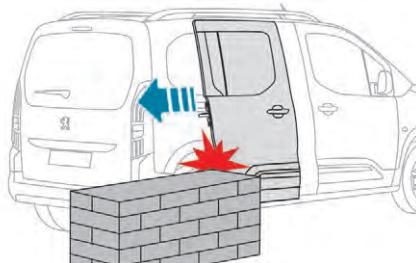
Lock your vehicle when using an automatic car wash.

! Before opening or closing or performing any movement of the doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or can block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

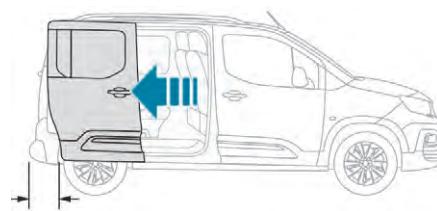
! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor to allow the door to slide correctly. As a safety measure and for functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

! To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the locking device (located at the bottom of the door).

## The doors and the overall dimensions of the vehicle

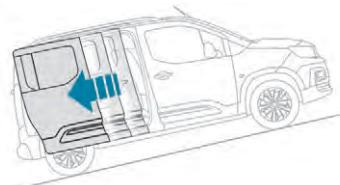


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Be sure to take this into account when you park alongside a wall, a post or a high kerb, etc.

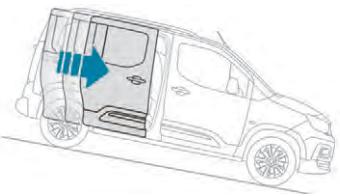


! When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

## On a steep slope



If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing up, open the door with care. The door may open more quickly due to the incline. On a steep slope, guide the side door manually to help it to close.



If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing down, the door may not stay open and may close again **violently**. Always ensure that you keep hold of it to prevent it closing again accidentally.

**!** In the case of a steep slope, the door may be driven by its own weight and as a consequence may open or close **violently**.

Take care not to leave the vehicle on a steep slope with the door(s) open without supervision. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

## Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

### Self-protection function

The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open one of the doors or the bonnet.

## Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

**i** If your vehicle is fitted with Additional heating/ventilation, interior volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system. For more information on Additional heating/ventilation, refer to the corresponding section.

## Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

**i** When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

**i** Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

**i** If an opening (door, tailgate or bonnet) is not closed properly, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

## Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window or sunroof partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

## Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

**i** To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out after every time the ignition is switched off.

## Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

## Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

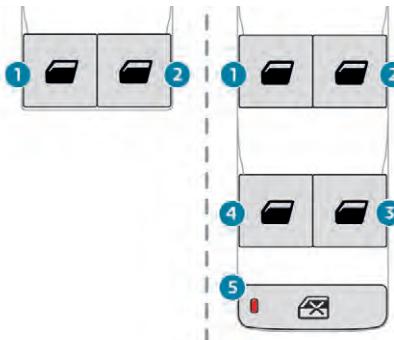
## Automatic activation

(Depending on the country of sale)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

## Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivation of the electric window switches located at the rear seats.

## Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

## Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i** The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

## Safety anti-pinch

Depending on version, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

**To reinitialise normal operation**, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes fully. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one more second.

The safety anti-pinch function does not operate during the activation of the function.

## Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

For your children's safety, press control 5 to deactivate the switches at the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation of the system. It remains on for as long as the deactivation is maintained. Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

## Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

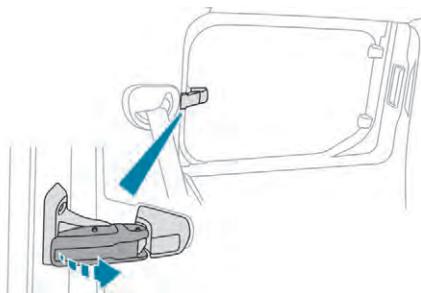
For each window:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres each time. Perform the operation until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

**!** In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned. When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows. The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows. Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

## Tilting rear door windows

### Opening

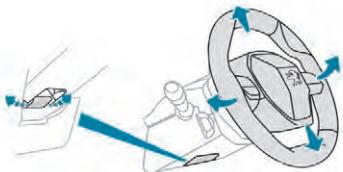


- ☞ Turn the lever outwards.
- ☞ Push it fully to secure the window in the open position.

### Closing

- ☞ Pull the lever to release the window.
- ☞ Turn the lever fully inwards to secure the window in the closed position.

## Steering wheel adjustment



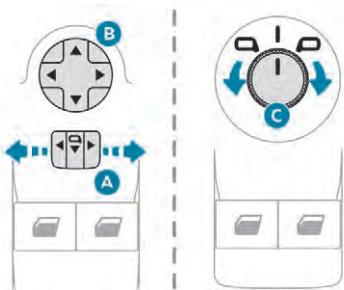
- When stationary, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

## Mirrors

### Door mirrors

#### Adjustment



- Move control A or turn control C (depending on the version you have) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control B or C (depending on the version you have) in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return control A or C (depending on the version you have) to its central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

3

#### Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

#### Electric folding

If your vehicle is fitted with this function, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



- Place control A in the central position.
- Pull control A back.

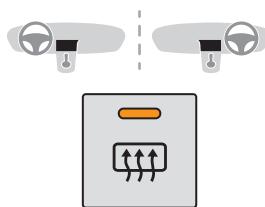
From the outside, lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.

## Electric unfolding

The electric unfolding of the mirrors is via the remote control or the key when unlocking the vehicle. Unless folding was selected with control A, pull the control back again to the central position.

**i** The folding/unfolding on locking/unlocking can be deactivated. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

## Heated mirrors



☞ Press the rear screen defrosting button.

**i** For more information on **Rear screen demist - defrost**, refer to the associated section.

## Rear view mirror

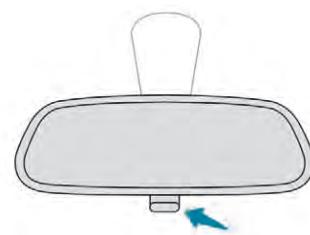
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

### Manual model

#### Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

#### Day/night position



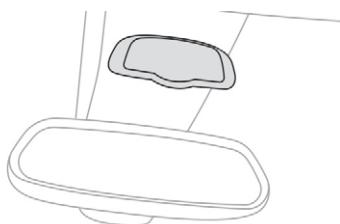
☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.  
☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

## Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

**i** In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Child-monitoring mirror



A child-monitoring mirror is installed above the interior rear view mirror. It allows the vehicle's rear passengers to be observed or to facilitate discussion between the front and rear passengers without modifying the mirror setting and without turning around. It can be easily folded to avoid dazzle.

## General recommendations for the seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if they are in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the backrests forming a table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

- Do not remove a head restraint without stowing it; secure it to a support inside the vehicle.
- Check that the seat belts always remain accessible to the passenger and easy to fasten.
- Passengers must never take their seat without adjusting and fastening their seat belt.
- In row 3, be careful not to leave your feet under the row 2 seat while it is being tilted.
- When a row 3 seat is in the fully folded position, ensure that the strap is correctly hooked to the Top Tether fixing of the row 2 backrest: risk of unexpected tipping of the seat.

! Before carrying out the manoeuvres, check that nothing and no one is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.

To avoid sudden folding, take care to hold the backrest and support it until it is horizontal.

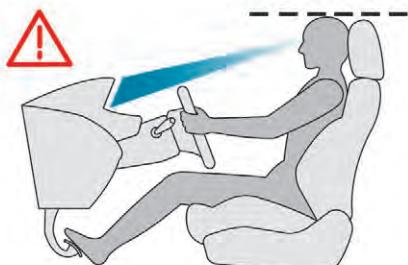
**Never** put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped. Place your hand on the grip/strap (depending on equipment) at the top of the seat cushion.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.

The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – risk of severe injury!

## Front seats

### PEUGEOT i-Cockpit



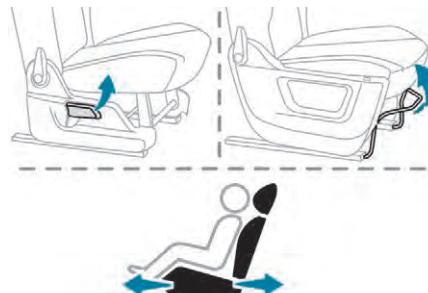
Before taking to the road and to benefit from the ergonomic layout of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the reach then the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

**i** Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that from your driving position you can see the "head-up" instrument panel clearly, over the reduced diameter steering wheel.

## Adjustments

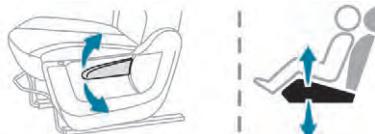
### Longitudinal



- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

### Height

**(driver only)**



- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle, pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

**i** For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

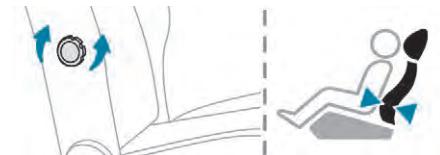
### Tilting the backrest



- ☞ Push the control backwards to adjust the backrest.

### Lumbar

**(driver only)**



- ☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

## Armrest



- To access the vertical position, raise the armrest until it locks.
- Lower the armrest to return it to the position for use.

It is possible to remove the armrest for the passenger seat.

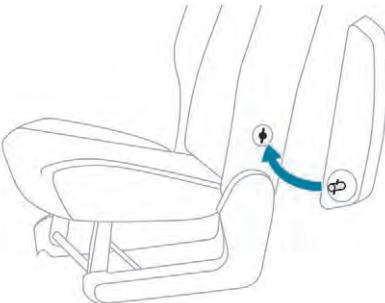
### Removing the armrest

- Pull the armrest into the vertical position.



- Push the shaft of the armrest towards the backrest.
- While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the rear.
- Pull the armrest and it will come away from the backrest.

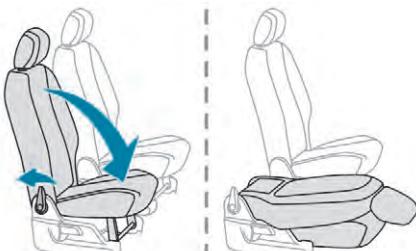
## Refitting the armrest



- Slot the armrest into the backrest, ensuring that you position the bayonets in line with the holes.
- Push the shaft of the armrest towards the backrest.
- While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the front.

The armrest is once again secured onto the backrest.

## Retractable position



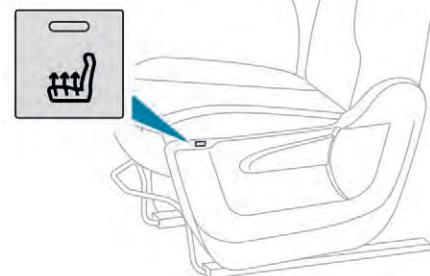
- If the centre console inconveniences you, remove the passenger's seat armrest.
- Push the control rearwards fully to tilt and guide the assembly.

This position allows you to transport long loads inside the vehicle with the doors closed. When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.

To reposition the seat, raise the backrest until it locks in the raised position.

3

## Heated seat control



Press the switch.

The temperature is controlled automatically. Pressing a second time stops operation.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

**!** Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

## Rear bench seat (row 2)

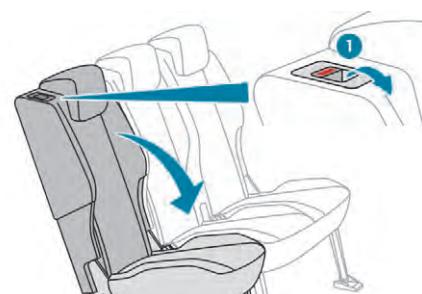
### Folding the backrests

First steps:

- ☛ lower the head restraints,
- ☛ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☛ check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
- ☛ check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

**i** The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.

When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.





- ☞ Turn backrest release grip 1.
- ☞ Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

## Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

- ☞ Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator in the release grip 1 is no longer visible.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

## Rear seats (row 2) Folding the backrests

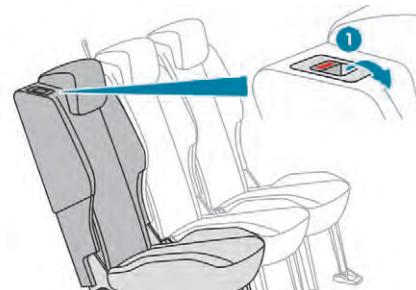
First steps:

- ☞ lower the head restraints,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

**i** The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion. When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.

## Folding from the passenger compartment

### Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)



- ☞ Turn backrest release grip 1.



- ☞ Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

### Central seat



- ☞ Pull backrest release tab 1.

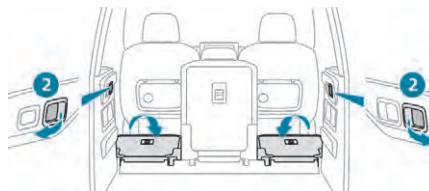


- ☞ Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

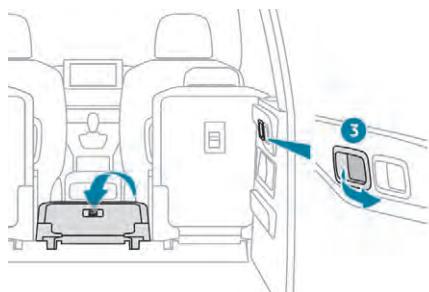
**!** With the central seat, only the strap must be used.

### Folding from the boot

#### Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)



#### Central seat



- ☞ Pull the backrest release lever 2 or 3 towards you.  
The backrest folds fully onto the cushion.

### Repositioning the backrests

#### Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)

**!** First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

- ☞ Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator on the release grips 1 of the outer seats is no longer visible.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

**!** Check that the backrest of the upright central seat is correctly aligned with the backrests of the outer seats.

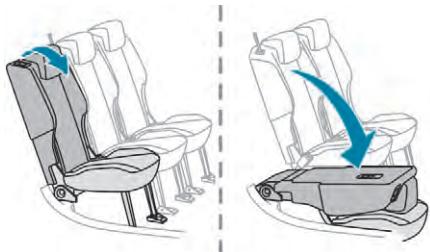
#### Central seat

- ☞ Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the central seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

## Rear seats (row 3)



### Access to row 3



- Using the row 2 seat grip, fold the backrest.
- To reposition it, tilt the backrest backwards until it locks into place.

### Label in row 3

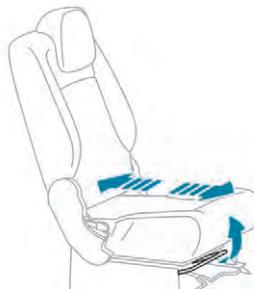


While driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger seated next to a seat in the fully folded position.

## Longitudinal adjustment



Long

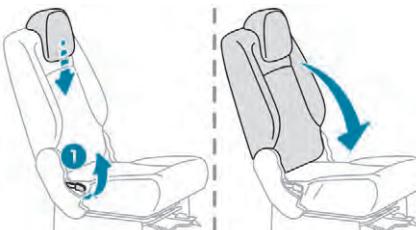


- Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

### Table position

#### Placing the backrest in the table position

- Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.



- Operate control 1 to fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.

## Repositioning the backrest

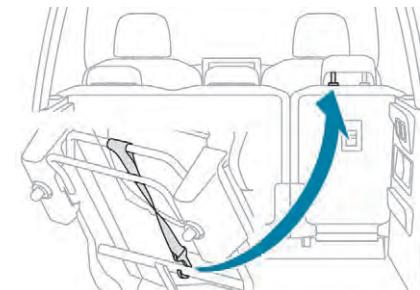
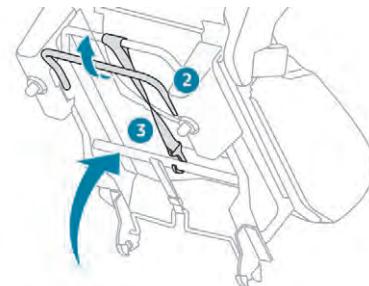
- Unlock it by pulling control 1.
- Return it to its initial position
- Check that the assembly is anchored properly.

## Fully folded position



#### Placing the seat in the fully folded position

- Fold the backrest to the table position.



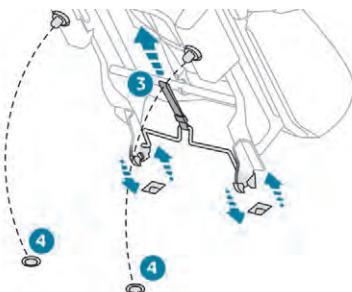
- ☞ Lift the bar **2**, located behind the seat, to release the feet of the seat from their anchorage in the floor.
- ☞ Tilt the entire seat forwards.
- ☞ Hook the strap **3** on the row 2 head restraint rod.

#### Repositioning the seat

- ☞ Fold the entire seat backwards.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

#### Removing the seat

- ☞ Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.
- ☞ Place the seat in the fully folded position.

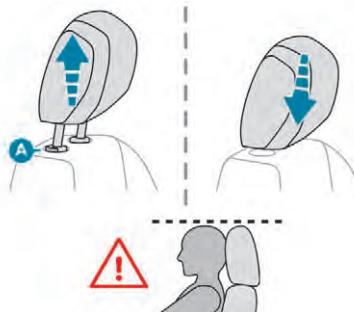


- ☞ Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.
- ☞ Still holding the strap **3**, lift the seat.

#### Refitting the seat

- ☞ Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.
- ☞ While still holding the strap **3**, place the anchorages in the anchorage points on the floor.
- ☞ Release the strap **3**.
- ☞ Ensure that no object or feet are obstructing the rear anchorage points **4** and that the seat belt is correctly positioned and available.
- ☞ Fold the seat backwards to fix its rear anchorage feet.
- ☞ Use the control **1** to lift the backrest into the initial position.
- ☞ Refit the head restraint.

## Adjusting the height of the head restraint



- ☞ To raise it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).

- ☞ To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

**!** The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

**The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.**

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

**!** Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed or not in the high position; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

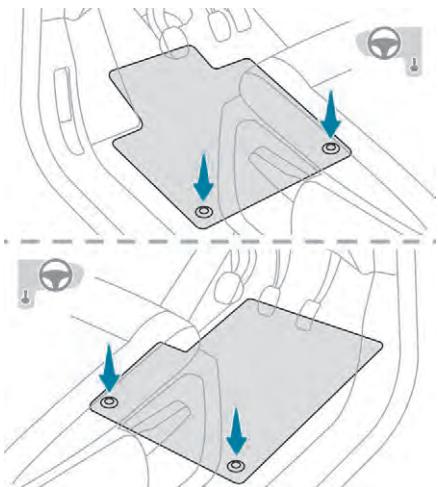
**i** For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Interior fittings

### Mats

#### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.



#### Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ reattach the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.



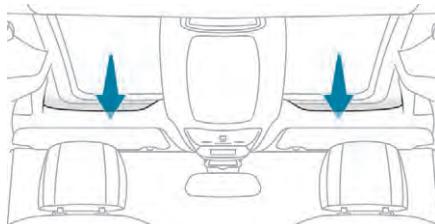
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- never place one mat on top of another. The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

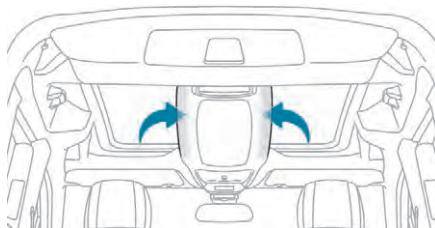
## Roof and its storage spaces

### Overhead storage unit



It is located above the sun visors and can be used to store various objects.

### Central storage



A storage space is located in the roof lining. The maximum authorised load is 6 kg.

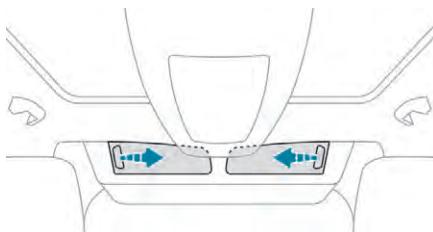


In the event of sharp deceleration, objects placed in the central storage compartment of the roof may be transformed into projectiles.

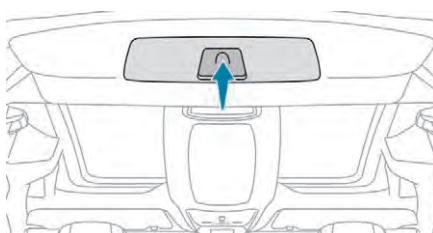
## Rear box

It can be accessed from the rear seats and from the vehicle's boot.

Its capacity is 60 litres, and the maximum authorised load is 10 kg.



- From the rear seats, slide the boot shutters to open it.



- From the vehicle's boot, place your thumb on the boot recess then pull the handle to open it.

**!** Open the rear box carefully to prevent any objects stored inside from falling out.

## Light ambience



The light ambience can be configured from the vehicle's configuration menu.



## Blind

### Opening/Closing

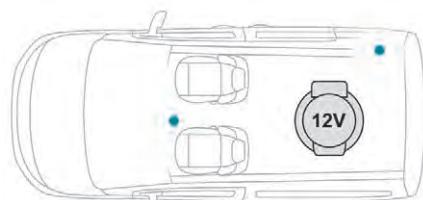


- Press and hold the button; the blind opens/closes and stops when you release the button.

**!** If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse its movement. To do this, press the switch concerned. When pressing the button to open/close the blind, the driver must ensure that nothing and no one might interfere with its movement. The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the blind.

## 12 V socket(s)

(Depending on version.)



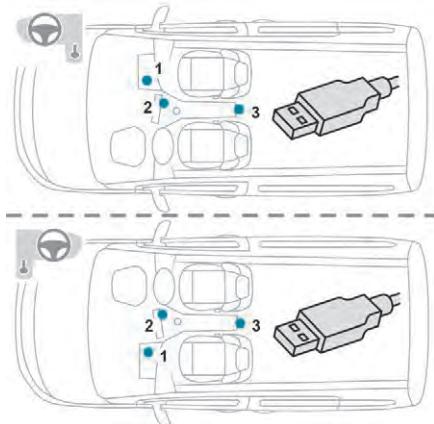
- To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## USB socket(s)

(Depending on version.)

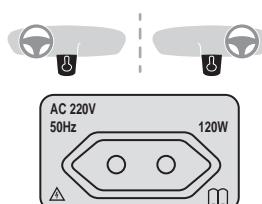


Sockets **1**, **2** and **3** allow the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, to recharge the device. Sockets **1** and **2** also allow the audio files to be read, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers. You can manage these files using the steering mounted or touch screen controls.

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle. For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

The sockets **1** and **2** also allow a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain smartphone applications can be used on the touch screen.

## 220 V/50 Hz socket



A 220 V/50 Hz socket (max. power: 120 W) is installed on the side of the central storage compartment.

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.

Downloaded from [thelostmanual.org](http://thelostmanual.org)

- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Check that the indicator lamp is on and green.
- ☞ Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

❗ Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension lead or multi-socket connector).

Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).

Do not use a device with a metal case (electric shaver, etc.).

As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

## Wireless smartphone charger



It allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

### Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

### Charging

- First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.
- Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.



- Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.
- Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

**!** The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.



Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!

### Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging...
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.

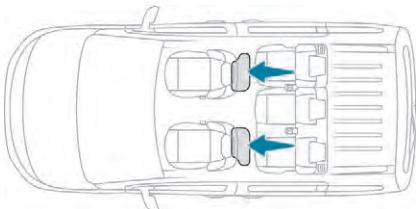


If the indicator lamp is lit orange:

- remove the portable device, then place it back in the middle of the charging zone.
- or
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

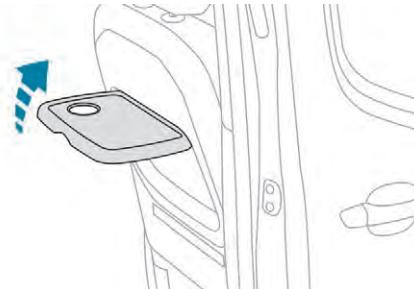
## Floor boxes



There are two storage boxes located beneath the rear passenger footwells.

- ☞ To open them, slide your fingers into the notch and lift the cover.

## Aircraft style tables

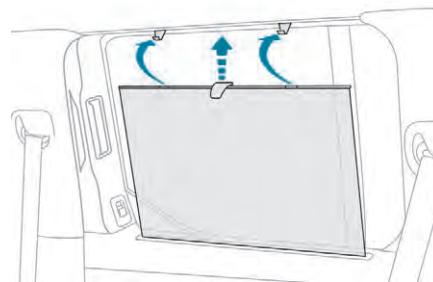


- ☞ To put the table in place, pull it upwards. As a safety precaution, the aircraft style table unhooks itself if excessive pressure is applied.
- ☞ To put the table back in place, pull it downwards.

**!** Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. In the event of sharp deceleration, these objects could become projectiles.

## Side blinds

They are fitted to the windows of the sliding side doors (depending on version).

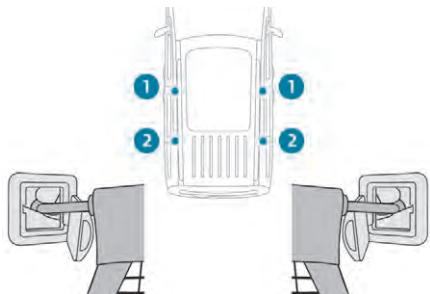


- ☞ To raise or lower the blind, pull it by the tab.

**i** To avoid damaging the blind:

- Guide it slowly using the tab, both up and down.
- Make sure the tab is properly secured before opening the door.

## High load retaining net

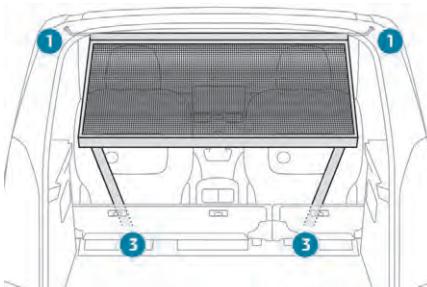


Hooked onto the upper fixings and the lower rings or lugs, this allows the use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

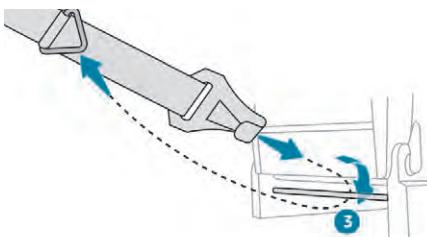
- Behind the rear seats (row 2).
- Behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

**i** When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening them easier.

## Installation behind row 1



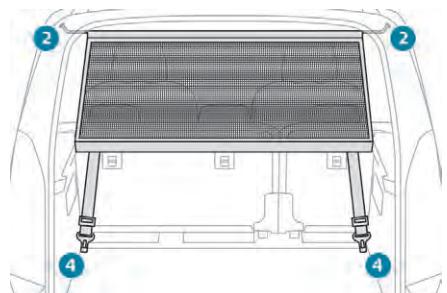
- ☛ Open the covers of the upper fixings 1.
- ☛ Unroll the high load retaining net.
- ☛ Position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 1, then do the same with the other end.
- ☛ Fully extend the straps.



- ☛ Wind each strap around bar 3 located under the front seat cushion (row 1), then secure each spring hook to the corresponding strap ring.

- ☛ Fold down the rear seats.
- ☛ Tighten the straps without raising the bench seat.
- ☛ Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

## Installation behind row 2



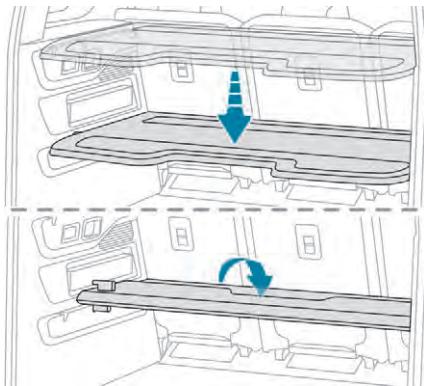
- ☛ Fold or remove the luggage cover.
- ☛ Open the covers of the upper fixings 2.
- ☛ Unroll the high load retaining net.
- ☛ Position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 2, then do the same with the other end.
- ☛ Attach the hook of each of the net's straps in the corresponding stowing ring 4 (located on the floor).
- ☛ Tighten the straps.
- ☛ Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring which is for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

## 2-position luggage cover parcel shelf (removable)

 Standard

 Standard



It can be installed in two different positions: high and low.  
It consists of two sections which can be folded back on each other.

- To fold it from the boot, take hold of it then fold it back on itself up to the rear seats.  
From the low position, you can store it by sliding it towards the backrests of the rear seats.
- To unfold it from the boot, take hold of it then unfold it up to the boot pillars.

 The maximum authorised weight on the luggage cover parcel shelf is 25 kg.

## Luggage cover roller

 Long

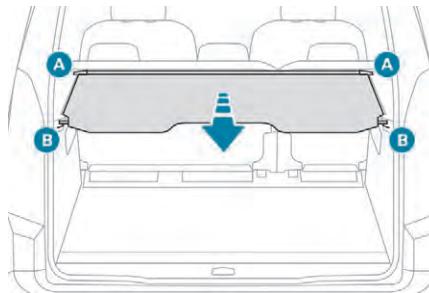
 Long

In 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second row seats, with the third row seats stored folded away.

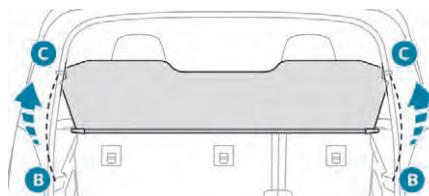
In 7-seat configuration, it is stored behind the third row seats.

 When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the luggage cover may turn into projectiles.

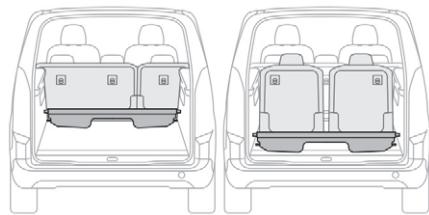
## Installation



- Position the left and right ends of the roller in the cut-outs A.
- Pull out the roller until it reaches the boot pillars.
- Insert the guides of the roller into the rails in pillars B.



- Depending on version, you can access the boot by opening the rear screen in the tailgate and attaching the guides of the roller into the rails of pillars C.

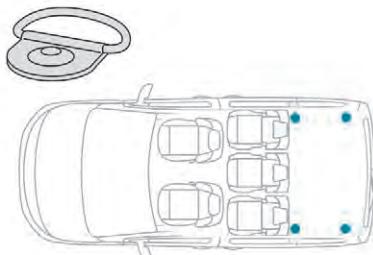


- ☛ The roller can be stored behind row 2 or 3.

## Removal

- ☛ Remove the guides of the roller from the rails in pillars B.
- ☛ Guide the roller as it reels in.
- ☛ Unlock the roller by pressing one of the handles located at the ends of the roller bracket.

## Stowing rings



Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure your loads.

As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards towards the cab as possible.

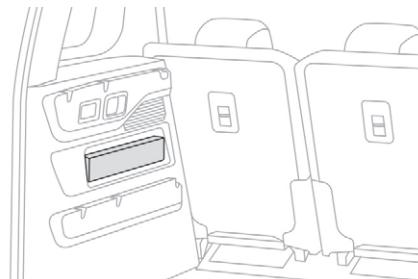
It is recommended that the load be secured firmly using the stowing rings on the floor.

**!** When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

## Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

## Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the boot to store a warning triangle.

## Heating



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.

## Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

## Air flow

- Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

**i** If you place the air flow control to the **minimum** position (system off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Temperature

- Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "LO" (cold) to "HI" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

## Air distribution



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

## Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

### On/off

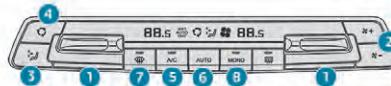
- Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

**!** Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

## Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



- Left-hand side/right-hand side temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- Recirculation of interior air.
- Air conditioning on/off.
- Automatic comfort mode.
- Visibility programme.
- "Mono" function.

## Automatic comfort mode

- Press the "AUTO" button **6** successively.

The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

**SOFT AUTO**

Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

**AUTO**

Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.

**AUTO FAST**

Provides dynamic and effective air flow.

**i** When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.

In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

## Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be automatically managed.

The "AUTO" symbol disappears if you change a setting.

## Deactivating the system

☞ Press button 2 "-" until the fan symbol disappears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.

Temperature is no longer controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt, however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

☞ Press button 2 "+" to switch the system on again.

## Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Push button 1 down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

**i** A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal. In addition, it is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

**i** On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

**i** For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Push button 1 down until "LO" is displayed or up until "HI" is displayed.

## "Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

☞ Press corresponding button 8 to activate/deactivate the function.

The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.

The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

## Visibility programme

☞ Press "Visibility" button 7 to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ Press "Visibility" button **8** again to stop the programme.

Or

- ☞ Press "AUTO" button **6** to return to the automatic comfort programme.

## Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

### On/off

- ☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

**!** Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

## Air distribution

- ☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:
  - the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
  - footwells,
  - the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
  - the windscreen, the side windows, the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
  - the central and side vents,
  - the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

## Air flow

- ☞ Press buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied progressively according to the value requested.

## Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

**i** This allows hot or cold air to be delivered more quickly when required.

- ☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air/ permit the intake of exterior air.

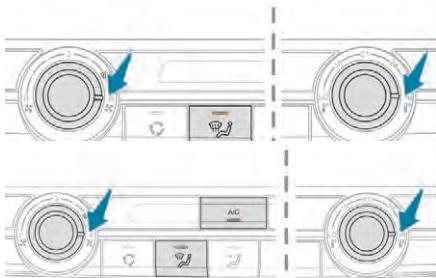
**!** Avoid prolonged use of recirculation of the interior air – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

## Front demist – defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreens and side windows.

## Heating or manual air conditioning



☞ Put the air flow, temperature and air distribution controls to the appropriately marked position.



☞ For air conditioning, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

## Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreens and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreens and side windows.



☞ To turn it off, press this button again or press "AUTO".



The system is reactivated with the values prior to the deactivation.



### Heated windscreen and washer jets

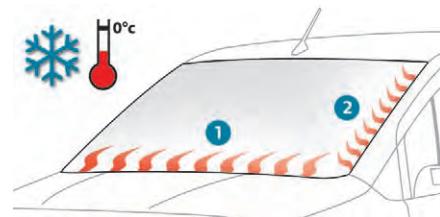
For more information on the **Wiper control stalk** and in particular the heated windscreens and washer jets, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

## Heated windscreen



Depending on country of sale. This function heats the windscreens in cold weather.



In area 1, the heating makes ice melt and allows you to free the wiper blades.

In area 2, the heating improves visibility by preventing the accumulation of snow when the wipers are operating.

## Switching on

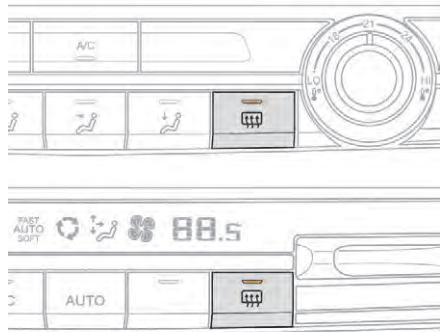


With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The period of operation depends on the exterior temperature.

Pressing this button again switches the function off; its indicator lamp goes off.

## Rear screen demist – defrost



## On/Off



Press this button to switch on/switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors (if fitted to your vehicle).

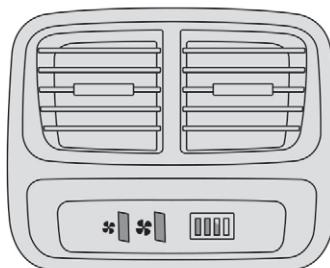


Switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.



The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

## Rear heating – air conditioning



3

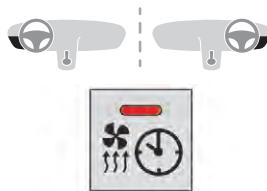
If your vehicle is so equipped, the temperature of the air distributed by the system is the same as the selection for the front.

## Air flow



Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the air flow.

## Additional heating/ventilation



### Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.



- This indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is programmed.
- This indicator lamp flashes while the heating is in operation or when switched on remotely via the remote control.
- This indicator lamp goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when the heating is stopped using the remote control.

### Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

## Programming With Bluetooth® audio system



- Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.
- Select "Pre-heat./Pre-ventil.".
- Select "Activation" and, if necessary for programming, select "Parameters".
- Select "Heating" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" to ventilate the passenger compartment.



- Select:
  - the 1<sup>st</sup> clock to programme/memorise the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
  - the 2<sup>nd</sup> clock to programme/memorise a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

Using these two clocks and depending on the season you can, for example, select one or the other start time.

A message in the screen confirms your choice.

## With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Press **Connect-App** or **Applications** to display the primary page.



Then press "Programmable heating/ventilation".



- Select the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.



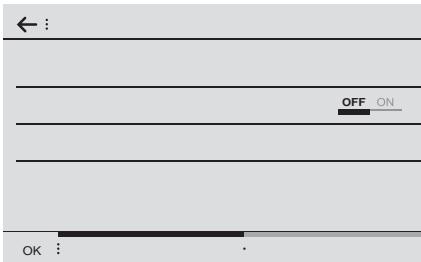
- ☞ Select the "Other settings" tab to choose "Heating" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
- ☞ Then programme/memorise the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached for each selection.

Press this button to save.

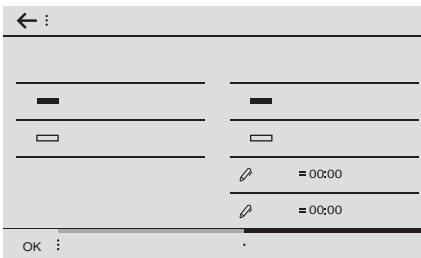


## With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

- ☞ Press the "Applications" menu.
- ☞ Press the "Vehicle Apps" tab.
- ☞ Press "Programmable heating/ventilation".



- ☞ Press the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.



- ☞ Select the "Heating" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
- ☞ Then programme/memorise the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached for each selection.
- ☞ Finally, press "OK" to confirm.

## Long range remote control

(Depending on version.)

This enables you to remotely switch the passenger compartment heating on or off. The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

3



### Switching on



- ☞ Press and hold this button to start the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in green for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

### Switching off



- ☞ Press and hold this button to stop the heating immediately.

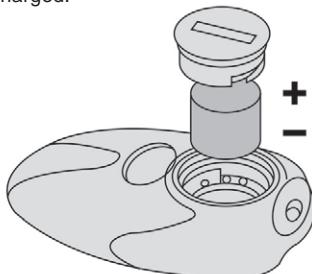
The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in red for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

**i** The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal. You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

## Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.

If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



☞ Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

**i** The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

**i** The additional heating system is powered by the fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel in the tank. If the tank level is on reserve, the system cannot be used. The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. The heating is activated provided that:

- the battery is sufficiently charged,
- the fuel level is adequate,
- the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.



Always switch off the additional heating while refuelling – risk of fire or explosion!

**!** To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system. Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) – risk of fire!

**!** Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places. Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces – risk of burns!

**♣** Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

## Advice

**i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreens, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor located at the rear free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located at the top of the windscreens; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month, to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ To prevent misting or deteriorating air quality inside the passenger compartment, you should not deactivate the system for too long and you should avoid extended operation of the air recirculation system when driving.
- ☞ Ensure that the cabin filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined cabin filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the

cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly according to the recommendations in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



If after an extended period parked in the sun, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment. The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.



The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary which is perfectly normal.

### Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you may temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Courtesy lamp

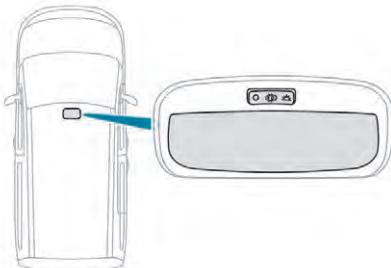
### Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch. All of the courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control. They go off gradually after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

### Type 1

(Depending on version.)



Permanently on, ignition on.



Lights up when one of the front or rear doors is opened.



Permanently off.



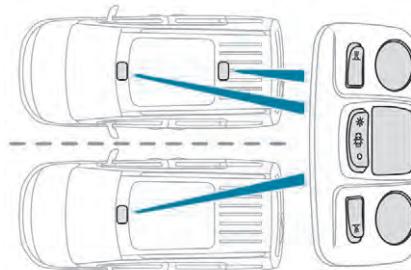
Row 2: comes on when one of the rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).



Permanently off.

### Type 2

(Depending on version.)



Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).



Permanently on, ignition on.

### Individual reading lamp

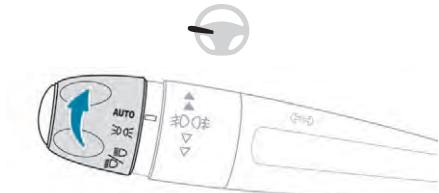


If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch.

With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

## Lighting control stalk

### Selection of main lighting mode



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.



**AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps/  
Daytime running lamps.  
Sidelamps only.



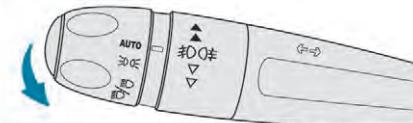
Dipped or main beam headlamps.



**i** Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

## Headlamp dipping

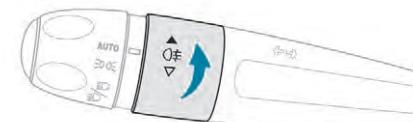


Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In "AUTO" and "Sidelamps" modes, the driver can flash the main beam headlamps by keeping the stalk pulled.

## Foglamps selection ring

### Rear foglamps



They operate with the sidelamps on.

Rotate the ring forwards to switch them on and rearwards to switch them off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

### With front and rear foglamps



They operate with the dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Turn the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring backwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

### **i When the lighting is left on**

An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.

In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

### **i Travelling abroad**

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

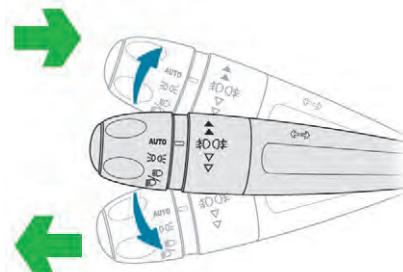
**!** In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

**!** Never look too closely at the luminous beam of LED headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

## **Direction indicators**



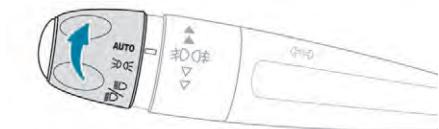
- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

### **Three flashes**

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



- ☞ Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position.  
Activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.
- ☞ Turn the ring to **another position**.  
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating fault



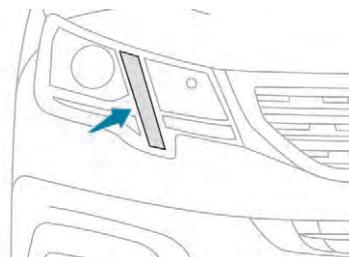
In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lamps come on and this warning lamp lights up in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard or at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps



The front lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with low light level or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").



The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

## Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down, depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk downwards; the left-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

## Guide-me-home lighting

### Manual



#### Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps once using the lighting control stalk.
- Another "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

#### Switching off

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

#### Automatic

If the ambient light level is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when switching off the ignition.



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.



## Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.



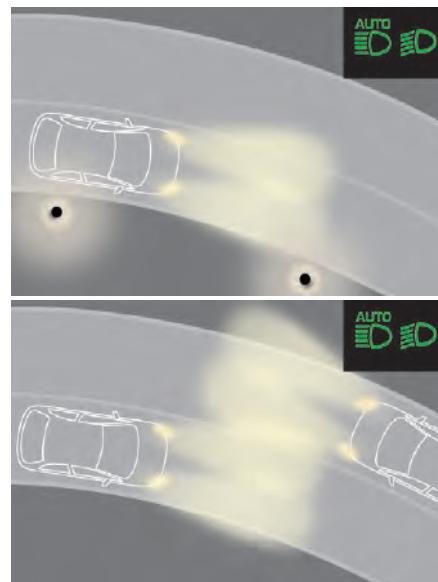
## Automatic headlamp dipping

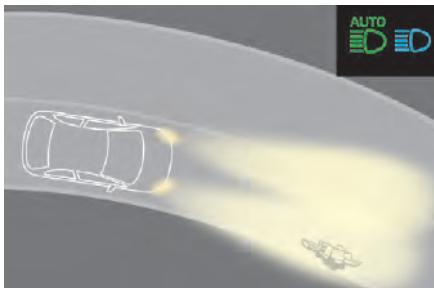
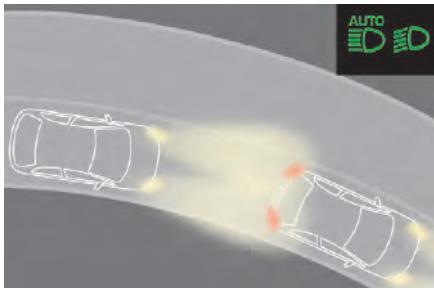
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid.

The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

! The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.





## Activation/Deactivation



Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

## Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.



☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:

- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the function, flash the headlamps again.

**i** The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

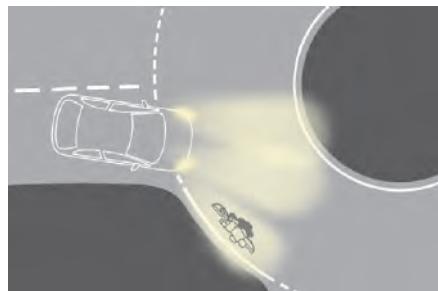
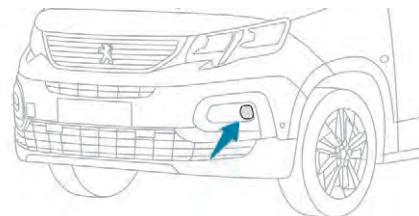
- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

## Cornering lighting



**With cornering lighting**

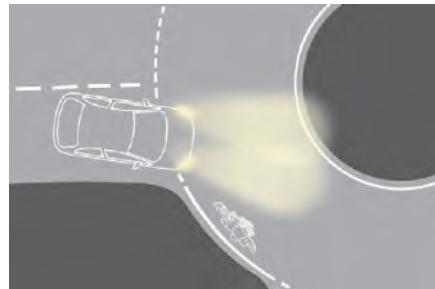
### Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.



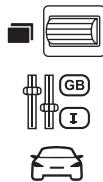
**Without cornering lighting**

### Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

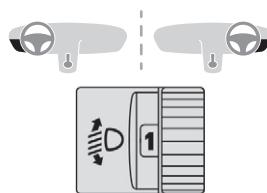
## Programming



The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This system is activated by default.

## Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** Empty.
- 1** Partial load.
- 2** Medium load.
- 3** Maximum authorised load.

**i** The initial setting is position **0**.

## Wiper control stalk

### Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be activated/deactivated:

- automatic windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

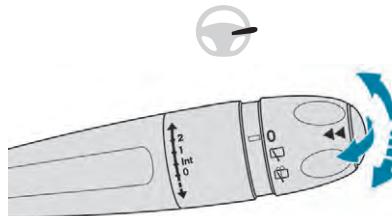
**i** In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

**!** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

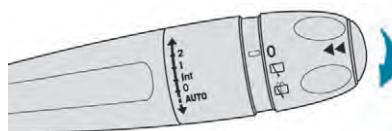
### Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

### With manual wiping (intermittent)



### With AUTO wiping



### Front wipers

Raise or lower the control stalk to the desired position to change the wiping speed.

<b>2</b>	Fast wiping (heavy rain).
<b>1</b>	Normal wiping (moderate rain).
<b>Int</b>	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
<b>0</b>	Off.

or

**AUTO**

Automatic wiping (press down, then release).  
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

## Front screenwash

☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

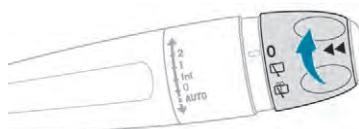
The screenwash and windscreen wiper operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled. Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

**i** On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

**i** The screenwash jets are integrated in the tips of each arm. The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the liquid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

**!** To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use a screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period. Never top up with water.

## Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:



Off.



Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).



Wash-wipe (set duration).

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

## Activation/Deactivation



Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



**i** This function is activated by default.

**!** If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

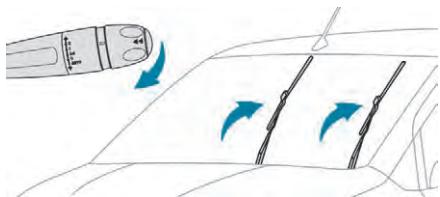
## Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

**i** To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreens,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

### Before removing a front wiper blade



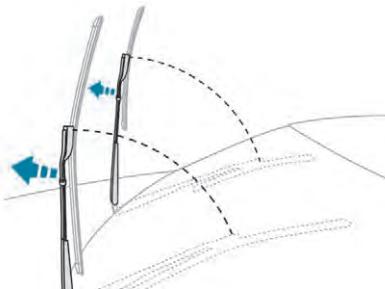
- ☞ In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- ☞ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

### After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position after an operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

## Changing a wiper blade

### Removing/refitting at the front



- ☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

**!** Do not touch the wiper blades in case you cause irreparable damage.  
Do not release them while moving them – Risk of damaging the windscreens!

- ☞ Clean the windscreens using a screenwash fluid.

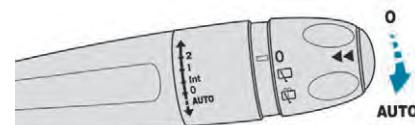
**i** Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold the each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreens.

### Removing/refitting at the rear

- ☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ☞ Clean the rear window using a screenwash fluid.
- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear window.

## Automatic windscreen wipers



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the

intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

## Switching on

Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

**AUTO**



Depending on version, this symbol appears in the display screen or this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

**AUTO**



## Switching off

**AUTO**



Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2). This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.



The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

## Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic windscreen wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Do not cover the rain sensor, located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Switch off the automatic windscreen wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

## General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

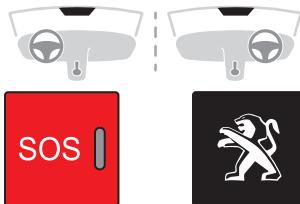
### We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshop, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

### ! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

## Emergency or assistance call



### Peugeot Connect SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language\*\*, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched\*\*. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly

to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

- \* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
- \*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.  
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

### Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.

If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

### Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

## Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

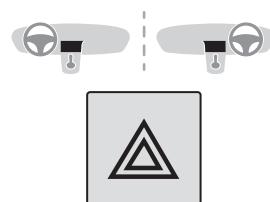
To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

**i** If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

## Hazard warning lamps



**☞** When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash.  
They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS function is triggered or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the next time you accelerate.

**☞** You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn



**☞** Press the central part of the steering wheel.

## Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control programme incorporating the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Automatic post-collision braking (APCB).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

## Definitions

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

### Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

### Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**  
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

**!** When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

**!** When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

**!** After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



### Activation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

### Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

It is however recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

However, below 31 mph (50 km/h) you can reactivate them manually.



To deactivate the systems, press this button or turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or dial comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine.

To reactivate the system:



Press this button.

Or



Turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or the dial goes off.

### Malfunction

 Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

## ! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding both the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components and the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

## Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB)

With automatic post-collision braking, in the event of an accident, the ESC system triggers an automatic braking action in order to reduce the risk of cumulative collisions by rebound, for example, if the driver does not react. Automatic braking intervenes after a frontal, lateral or rear impact.

### Conditions for operation

The impact has resulted in the deployment of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners.

The braking systems and electric functions of the vehicle must remain operational after the collision.

**i** Automatic braking is accompanied by illumination of the vehicle's brake lamps.

**i** The system does not intervene if driver action is detected:

- Accelerator pedal pressed.
- Brake pedal pressed.

**!** The system works within the limits of the laws of physics. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously adapt the vehicle's speed to the driving and road conditions.

## Malfunctions

### Braking systems fault



Simultaneous illumination of these two warning lamps.

### Airbags or pyrotechnic pretensioning systems fault



Simultaneous illumination of these two warning lamps.

Drive carefully.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

## Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability programme (ESC) must not have any faults.

Between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer, it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.

For advice on driving safely when **using a Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Malfunction



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

**!** The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving conditions, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It must not encourage the driver to take additional risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or driving at too high a speed.

In certain cases, the swaying of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.

When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden swaying of the trailer.

Associated with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow) tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

## Operating modes



## Advanced Grip Control

Special patented traction control system which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during passenger vehicle use).

## Standard (ESC)



This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

**i** Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

## Snow



This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

## All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)



This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

## Sand



This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

**!** Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

## Recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

## Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

**i** For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.

The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling. With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

**i** When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

**i** The system is not available:

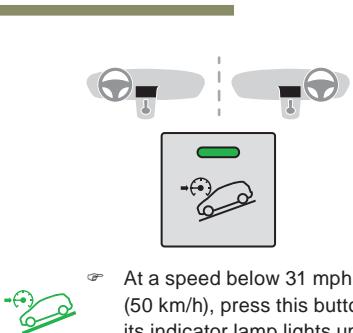
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
- if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Adaptive cruise control, depending on the type of gearbox.

## Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.

The system's status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or moving at speeds up to 31 mph (50 km/h).



☞ At a speed below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lamp lights up to select the system; this indicator lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at a speed below 19 mph (30 km/h).

☞ When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



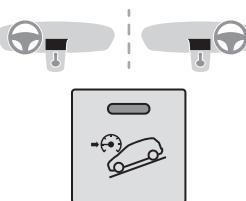
- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the warning lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

During a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.

The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.

If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the indicator lamp in the button remains lit. Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, and the slope and pedal release conditions are met. You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

## Switching off



☞ Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp also goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Operating fault

 If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Seat belts

### Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system (or **double** on the driver's side, depending on equipment) and force limiters (or **progressive force limiters** on the driver's side, depending on equipment).

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

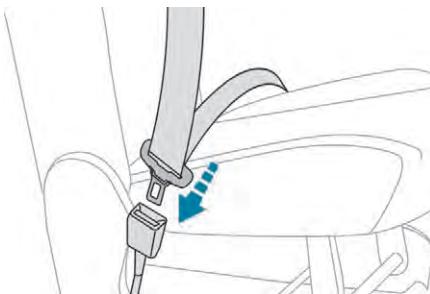
The **double** pyrotechnic pretensioning system operates in identical fashion, except that it combines two anchoring points instead of one, thereby reinforcing its efficiency.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

The **progressive force limiter** operates in identical fashion, except that it takes into account the build of the driver, thereby optimising the reduction of the pressure of the seat belt against the chest, following an impact.

### Fastening



- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

## Rear seat belts (row 2)



### Outer seats

Depending on equipment, they may be fitted with a single pretensioning system and force limiters.

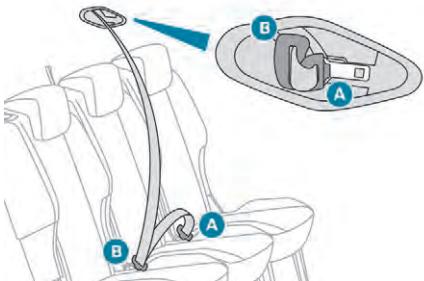
Be sure to put the correct seat belt in the correct buckle.

Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

### Centre seat

The seat belt does not have a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiters.

## Installation

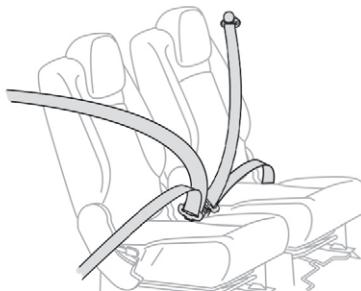


- Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the right-hand buckle.
- Insert tongue **B** into the left-hand buckle.
- Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

## Removal and storage

- Press the red button on buckle **B**, then on buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

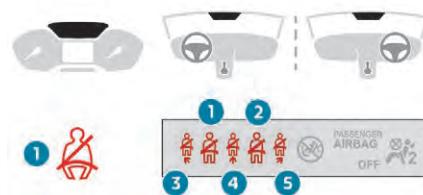
## Rear seat belts (row 3)



They do not have a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiters.

**!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, check that the outer belts are properly tensioned and fix the tongues to their anchoring points. The centre seat belt must be completely reeled in.

## Seat belt warning lamps



- Front left seat belt warning lamp (or depending on country, driver's warning lamp).
- Front right seat belt warning lamp (or depending on country, driver's warning lamp).
- Rear right seat belt warning lamp (row 2).
- Rear centre seat belt warning lamp (row 2).
- Rear left seat belt warning lamp (row 2).

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for 2 minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remains on until the driver or the front passenger and/or the rear passenger(s) fasten their seat belt.

## Front seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **1** comes on in the instrument panel, and the corresponding warning lamp (**1** or **2**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display if the driver's seat belt and/or the passenger(s) seat belt is/are not fastened or is/are unfastened.

## Rear seat belt warning lamp(s)

The corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display if one or more rear passengers (row 2) unfasten their seat belt.



These seat belt warning lamps only apply to row 2.

### Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

### Advice

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

### **i Instructions for children**

Use a suitable child seat, if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i In case of impact**

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact**, the pyrotechnic system may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp is lit. After an impact, get the seat belt system checked and if necessary have it replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2) in the event of violent collisions.

The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

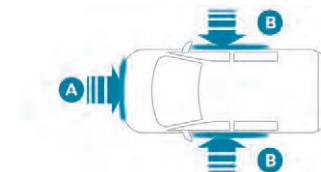
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

### **! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

## Impact detection zones



**A. Frontal impact zone.**

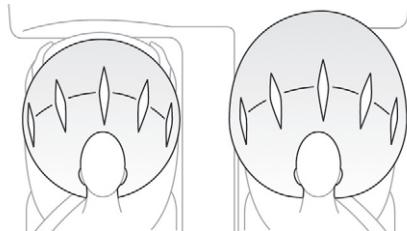
**B. Side impact zone.**

**i** Airbag deployment generates slight smoke emissions and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

Although this smoke is not harmful, sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise generated by the deployment of one or more airbags (detonation) may result in mild and temporary loss of hearing.

## Front airbags



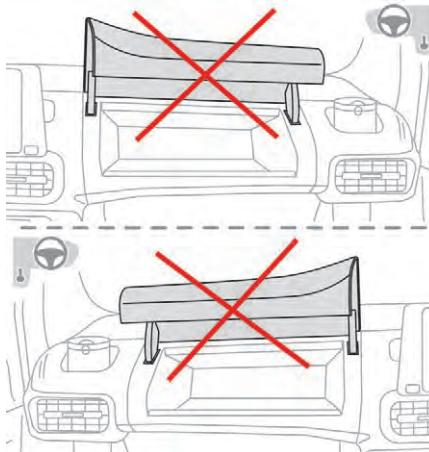
System which protects the driver and front passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the roof.

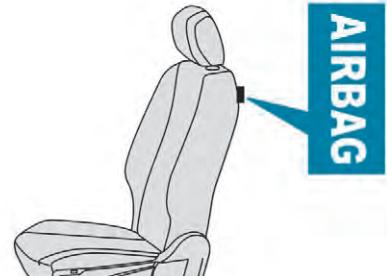
### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger side, to cushion their forward movement.



## Lateral airbags



If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

### Deployment

The airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

## Curtain airbags

If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that contributes towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the central seats) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

## Deployment

The airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

**!** In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

## Advice

**!** **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.

The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

5

### Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### ! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer. Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

**i** The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

**i** **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

**!** Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

**!** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## Child seat at the front



When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust this seat to the **highest position**, in the **fully back position**, with the **backrest straightened**.

## "Rearward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

## "Forward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be activated.

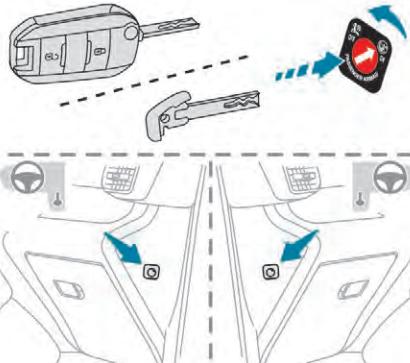
## Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this instruction. In line with current legislation, this warning is available in the following table in all of the languages required.

## Deactivating the front passenger airbag



5

- ☞ With the ignition off, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch, accessible at the side of the glove box when the front passenger door is open.
- ☞ Turn it to the OFF position.
- ☞ Remove it, keeping the switch in this position.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes in the seat belt warning lamps display. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

## Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger(s) in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

AR	لا يجب ابدا تركيب نظام لاجناس الطفل في المقعد الخلفي في اتجاه الوراء على مقدمة سيارة مجهزة بوسادة امان هولية امامية مفتوحة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل او باصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDÝ neumistíujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁZNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÖSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojaan on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeamisen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetíránya háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védettülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA nejrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonés su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sédynés, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinés ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādīet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahu lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza koriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEL'NÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbotom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

## Child seat at the rear

### Row 2

#### "Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Adjust the rear seat (row 2) to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened.

#### "Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

**i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

**!** For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

### Row 3



If fitted to your vehicle, when a child seat is installed on a rear passenger seat in the 3rd row, adjust the seat to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened, so that the child seat or the legs of the child do not touch the 2<sup>nd</sup> row seats.

**!** Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the 3<sup>rd</sup> row.

## Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

#### Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



**L1**  
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"  
Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

**Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**



**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX  
mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.  
Is only installed on the outer rear seats.  
The head restraint on the vehicle seat must  
be removed.

**Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**



**L6**

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.  
Is only installed on the front passenger seat  
or on the outer rear seats.

## Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved (c) according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

Seat position		Weight of the child and indicative age					
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (d) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15-25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22-36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old		
Row 1 (a)	Fixed passenger seat			X			
	Passenger seat with longitudinal adjustment	With passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"			U (f)		
		With passenger airbag activated "ON"	X	UF (f)			
Row 2 (b) (e)		U					
Row 3 (b) (e)		U (g) (h)					

### Key

- (a) ↗ Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.
- (b) ↗ To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

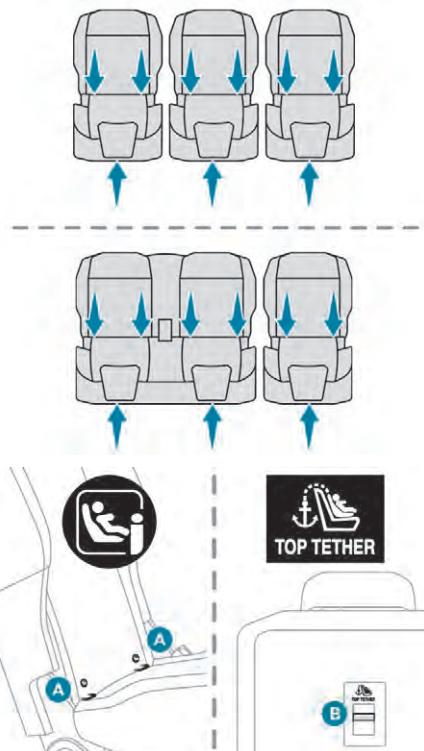
- (c) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (d) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.
- (e) ↗ To install a child seat at the rear, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", move the seats in front forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (f) ↗ With the fixed passenger seat (which cannot be placed in the folded position), adjust the backrest angle to 0°.

For more information on the **Front seats** and, in particular, the folded position for the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.

- (g)  In version **Standard**, fold the row 2 backrests.
- (h) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the 3rd row.
- U** Seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- UF** Seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.
- X** Seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.

## "ISOFIX" mountings

### Row 2



Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX regulation.

If fitted on your vehicle, the regulation ISOFIX mountings are identified by labels.

The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:

- Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" marking,
- If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B**, located behind the vehicle's seat, called Top Tether, for securing the upper strap, indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.

The Top Tether secures the upper strap of child seats that have them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the tilting of the child seat forward.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two front rings **A**.

Some child seats also have an upper strap which is attached to rear ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),

- run the strap of the child seat behind the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to rear ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

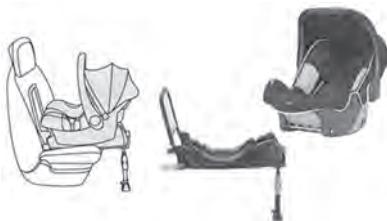
! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

## Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

### "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)

#### Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Is installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.

The base has a support leg, height adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the seat body is used and is attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

### RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category: **B1**)

#### Group 1: from 9 to 18kg



Is installed only in the "forward facing" position.

Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

3 seat body angles: sitting, reclining and lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

## Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age								
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Carrycot	"rearward facing"			"rearward facing"		"forward facing"			
ISOFIX size category	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Row 1 (a)	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2 (b)	Seat behind the driver's seat	IL (c)	IL				IUF/IL			
	Centre rear seat and behind the front passenger		IL (d)							
Row 3 (b) (e)	Not ISOFIX									

**Key**

- (a) ↗ Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.
- (b) ↗ To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
- (c) The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
- (d) ↗ Adjust the rear passenger seat without height adjuster to the fully back position.
- (e) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the 3<sup>rd</sup> row.

**IUF** Seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

**IL** Seat suitable for an ISOFIX Semi-Universal child seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For more information on **ISOFIX child seats** and in particular on securing the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

## i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position,

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision. For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Locations for i-Size child seats

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position		i-Size child restraint system
Row 1 <b>(a)</b>	Passenger seat	Not i-Size
Row 2 <b>(b) (c)</b>		i-U
Row 3 <b>(b)</b>		Not i-Size

**Key**

(a) ↗ Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(b) ↗ To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

(c) ↗ Adjust the front seat to the maximum height.

**i-U** Suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing" and "rearward facing".

**i-UF** Only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing".

## Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

**The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.**

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

### ! Children at the rear

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimal installation of the forward facing child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

### ! Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

### ! Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

### ! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

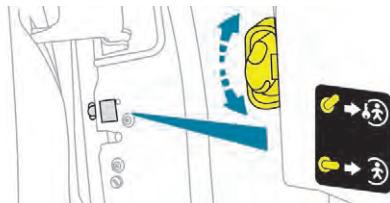
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

## Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



### Locking



Turn the control on the edge of the side door upwards.

### Unlocking

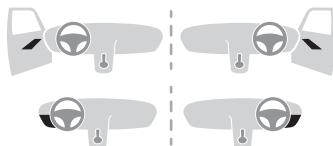


Turn the control on the edge of the side door downwards.

## Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged rear doors or tailgate) using their interior controls.

### Activation/Deactivation



With the ignition on:

- ☛ Press this button; its indicator lamp remains on while the child lock is activated. It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.
- ☛ Press this button again; its indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is deactivated.

**i** In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated (child lock off) automatically.

**!** Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Do not drive with the sliding side door open.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

## Driving advice

Observe driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, taking a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

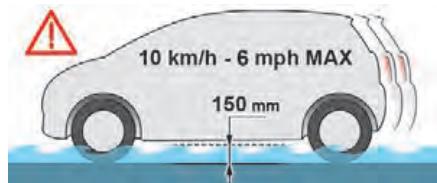
! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

## Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling.

In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),

- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

## In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

## Side wind

- Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

- Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

- Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

**i** For more information on **Headlamp beam height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing system is used.

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

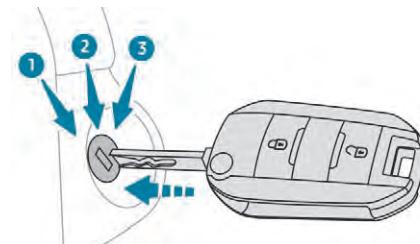
## Starting/switching off the engine

### Starting

**(!)** The parking brake must be applied.

- With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position P and fully depress the brake pedal.

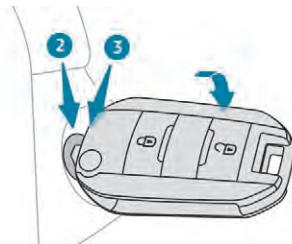
### Using the conventional key/the remote control key



- Stop position.
- Ignition on position.
- Starting position.

- ☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the start code.
- ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

**i** In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).



- ☞ Turn the key to position 2, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

**00** ☞ Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position 3 without pressing the accelerator pedal until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is hot. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.  
Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate to reach 1,300 rpm according to the air conditioning requirements.
- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

**i** With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.

Wait a few seconds before restarting the engine. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine.

Call in a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

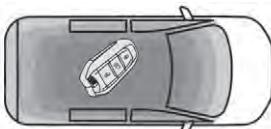
**!** To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

## With Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.
- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.



With a manual gearbox, the steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine starts more or less instantly.

**i** The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already hot. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
- Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate to reach 1,300 rpm according to the air conditioning requirements.
- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

**i** With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).



For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

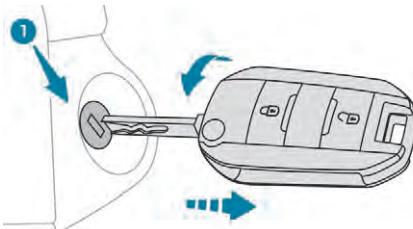
**i** The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system remote control in the recognition zone is essential. Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person. If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed. Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

**i** If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message appears in the instrument panel. In some cases, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "START/STOP" button to help unlock the steering column; a message informs you of this.

## Switching off

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.

### Using the conventional key/the remote control key



- ☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, the front wheels should be straight before switching off the engine.

**(!)** ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is completely immobilised.

**i** When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors. As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your remote control with you, even for a short period.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

**i** Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

## Key left in the ignition

**i** When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## With Keyless Entry and Starting

- With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "START/STOP" button.

With a manual gearbox, the engine switches off and the steering column locks.

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine switches off.

**i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not switch off.

**!** To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

## Switching the ignition on with Keyless Entry and Starting



With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

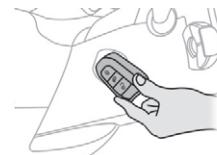
- Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.



**i** With the ignition on, the system will automatically go into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

## Back-up starting with Keyless Entry and Starting

Should your vehicle not detect the electronic key in the recognition zone, because the remote control battery is flat, a back-up reader is provided to the left, behind the steering wheel, to allow starting.



- Place and hold the remote control against the reader, then:
  - With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.
  - With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position P, then fully depress the brake pedal.
- Then, press the "START/STOP" button. The engine starts.

## Forced switch-off with Keyless Entry and Starting

In the event of an emergency only and with the vehicle stationary, you can switch off the engine.



- To do this, press the "START/STOP" button and keep it pressed for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

## Remote control not recognised with Keyless Entry and Starting

If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone when you close a door or when you (later) request switching off of the engine, a message appears in the instrument panel.

- ☞ If you want to force switching off of the engine, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds, then contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.



In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

## Manual parking brake Application

- ☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.



- ☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.



When parking on a slope, or on a steep slope with a laden vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

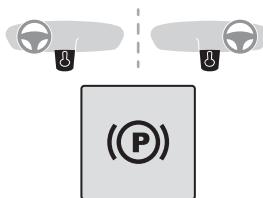
**i** Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

**!** With a manual gearbox, engage a gear then switch off the ignition.

**!** With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition.

## Electric parking brake

The system provides, in automatic operation, for the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and its release as the vehicle moves off.



The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- ☞ by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,

- ☞ by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it. Automatic mode is activated by default.

## Indicator lamp

 This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

- ! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear. As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed. If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear with a manual gearbox.

When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox. For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

## Manual operation

### Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ☞ press the brake pedal,
- ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ☞ pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

## Automatic operation

### Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.

### With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1<sup>st</sup> gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

### With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

**i** With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake at any time using the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

**!** When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

### Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

**!** Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

## Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

### Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

### Parking the vehicle with the brake released

**!** In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.

To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

## Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released.

- ☞ Switch off the engine.  
Illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm the application of the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked. For further information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, the opening of the driver's door will cause an audible signal to sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

## Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.  
Downloaded from [thelastmanual.org](http://thelastmanual.org)

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.

Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

## Emergency braking

**!** The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems provide stability of the vehicle during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

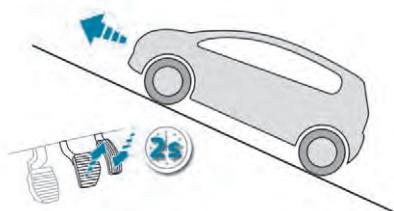
## Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

It is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

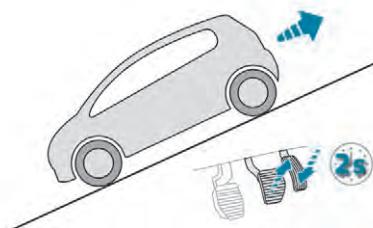
**!** Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp lights up fixed in the instrument panel.



**Uphill**, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.

With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position D or M.



**Downhill**, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

## Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## 5-speed manual gearbox Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ With the clutch pedal fully down, you must place the gear lever in neutral.
- ☞ Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

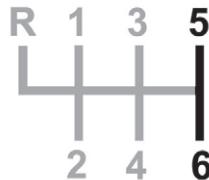
**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

**i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## 6-speed manual gearbox

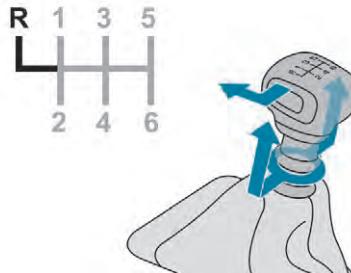
### Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear



☞ Move the gear lever fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

**!** Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear).

## Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

**i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## Automatic gearbox

Eight speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.

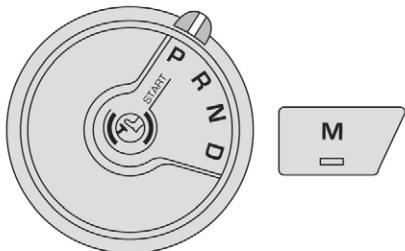
There are two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

In automatic mode, you can still change gear manually using the steering mounted control paddles, when overtaking, for example.

## Gear selector

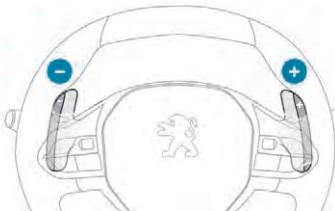
**!** To safely operate the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake.



- P. Park.
  - With your foot on the brake, turn the selector to this position for parking or starting.
- R. Reverse.
  - Turn the selector to this position.
- N. Neutral.
  - Turn the selector to this position for starting.
- D. Automatic operation.
  - Turn the selector to this position.
- M. Manual operation with sequential changing of the gears.
  - With the selector in position **D**, press this button then use the steering mounted controls to change gear.

**i** Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a car wash tunnel.

## Steering mounted controls



- Pull the right-hand "+" or left-hand "-" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

**i** The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

## Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the gear selector or press button **M**, the corresponding symbol appears in the instrument panel.

- P. Park
- R. Reverse

- N. Neutral
- D. Drive (automatic operation)
- M. Manual (manual operation)
- 1 to 8.** Gear engaged
- Invalid value



If the message "Foot on the brake" is displayed in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

## Starting the vehicle



- With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.

- Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

- Release the parking brake.
- Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

**!** If you have to move off on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal.

- Progressively release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If **P** is displayed in the instrument panel while the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.

If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

**!** If position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected when the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

Never leave children in the vehicle unsupervised.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

**!** If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Automatic operation



☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.



For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

For better safety, the gearbox will not shift up if you release the accelerator sharply.



Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Temporary manual control of gear changes

You can temporarily take over control of gear changes using the "+" and "-" steering mounted control paddles. If the engine speed allows, the gear change is carried out.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.

After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

## Creep function (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).

With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the vehicle **moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).



As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

## Manual operation



- With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.

The indicator lamp for the button comes on.

- Operate the "+" or "-" steering mounted control paddles.



**M** appears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

- It is possible to return to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.

The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

**i** In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.

**i** It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

**i** If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually activated is displayed.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

**i** To save the brakes when descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down to a lower gear). Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative. Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

**i** Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation is preferable.

This is because automatic operation may not be best suited, not allowing the use of engine braking.

## Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

- Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

**i** A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.

If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

- Return the selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

**!** On a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

**!** In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

## Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3<sup>rd</sup> gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time (braking or acceleration must be done only with the right foot),
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

 To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the selector on **N** and apply the parking brake.

## Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this indication without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear shift recommendations must not be considered as compulsory. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

 The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

**i** The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

6

## Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

## Going into engine STOP mode

**i** For your convenience during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

Stop & Start does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering, etc. A slight delay between the vehicle stopping and the engine cutting out may be noticed.

**!** Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

**A** When the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h) or the vehicle is stationary (depending on engine), this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you put the gearbox into neutral and release the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**, when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in position **N**.

## Stop & Start time counter

**A** (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)  
-----  
ECO

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated with certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature) to assure correct operation of the system and mainly when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- a sliding side door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start by the driver,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,

- demisting is active,
- the exterior temperature is lower than about 0°C or higher than 35°C.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode

**A**

With a **manual gearbox**, the Stop & Start indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and the engine restarts automatically when you press the clutch pedal **fully** down to the floor.

With an **automatic gearbox**, the Stop & Start indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.

## Special cases: START mode triggered automatically

START mode is activated automatically with certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting) to assure correct operation of the system or the vehicle and mainly when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you open a sliding side door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on the engine)

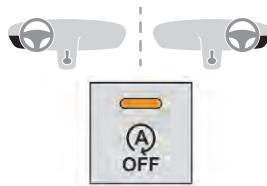


In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

## Deactivation/Activation

### With button



☞ To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button. The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is deactivated.

### With audio system/touch screen



Activation or deactivation is managed via the vehicle configuration menu.



! If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

i The system reactivates automatically every time the engine is started by the driver.

### Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

### Driving on flooded roads



Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

6

## Malfunction

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel.



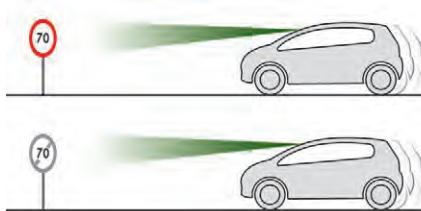
The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.  
If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.  
All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear selector in position **N** and to press the brake pedal. With the vehicle stationary, you must switch off the ignition and then start the engine again.

## Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

**!** This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code.  
The actual signs always take priority over those suggested by the system.  
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:



- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

**!** It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

- Certain road signs detected by the camera (e.g. entering a built-up area).

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
<b>Entry into built-up area</b> Example: 	<b>Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav</b> 30 mph or 50 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) <b>With PEUGEOT Connect Nav</b> Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.
<b>Entry into intersection zone</b> Example: 	<b>Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav</b> 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) <b>With PEUGEOT Connect Nav</b> Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

- Certain road sign qualifier plates detected by the camera (e.g. the speed limit if towing).

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
<b>Speed limit in rain</b> Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wiping" or "automatic wiping" position (so that the rain sensor is activated): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit if towing</b> 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit applicable over a certain distance</b> Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes</b> 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit in snow</b> Example: 	If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
<b>Speed limit at certain times</b> Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.  
 It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.  
 For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.  
 The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.

The system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic conditions.

It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.

The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**i** To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

**i** Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

## Activation/Deactivation

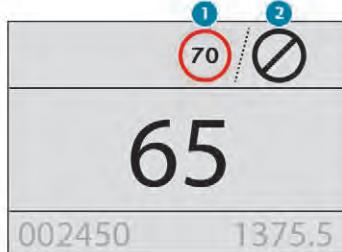
By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



Activation and deactivation is done via the vehicle configuration menu.



## Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.  
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle's speed exceeds it by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (example: 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed flashes for 10 seconds.

## Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,

- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

**i** If an app on your smart phone is used via Mirror Screen, the sign displayed by the system may be temporarily hidden. It will be redisplayed as soon as you pass another sign.

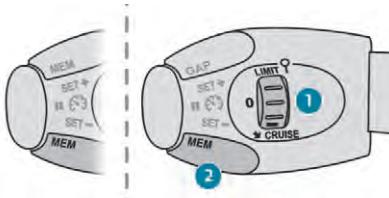
## Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can keep the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

**i** For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

## Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

## Memorising the speed



**☛** Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and **MEM**

flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

**i** If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

**☛** Make an **initial** press on button **2** to request saving of the speed suggested.

A message is displayed to confirm the request.

**☛** Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

6

## Extended Traffic Sign Recognition



Using the camera installed at the top of the windscreen, this additional system recognises these road signs and displays them in the instrument panel.

One-way street: if you start driving down a one-way street the wrong way, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).

Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code.  
The actual signs always take priority over the display by the system.  
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

## Speed limiter



This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.

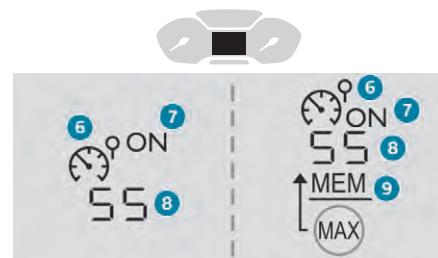
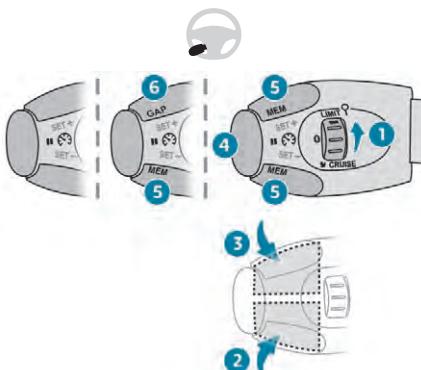
The minimum programmed speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed value remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Steering mounted control

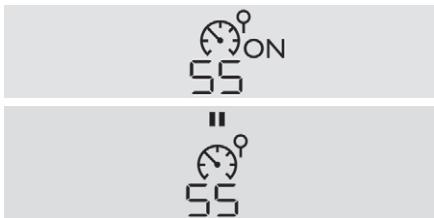


1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decreases the set value.
3. Increases the set value.
4. Speed limiter on/pause.
5. Depending on version:  
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable speed limiter or  
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.
7. Speed limiter on/pause indication.

8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

## Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel 1 to the "LIMIT" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.
- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button 4 to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

## Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button 2 or 3,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button 2 or 3.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button 5 to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.



The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is triggered. Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

6

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle.



Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

## Switching off

- Turn thumbwheel 1 to position "0". The display of information related to the speed limiter disappears.

## Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.  
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

**i** The cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on vehicles fitted with Stop & Start.

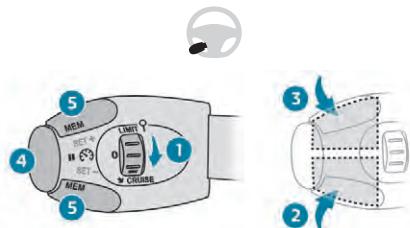
The operation of the cruise control can be temporarily interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control 4 or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

**i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

**!** The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

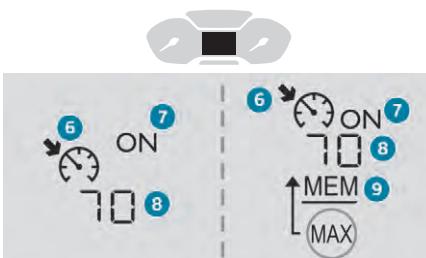
## Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on version:  
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable cruise control  
or  
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control mode selection indication.
7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

## Switching on/pausing



☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "CRUISE" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button 2 or 3; the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.



☞ Pressing button 4 temporarily interrupts operation of the system (pause).  
☞ Pressing button 4 again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

## Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

**!** As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.



The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.



Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

**!** When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused. To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

## Switching off

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to position "**0**". The display of information related to the cruise control disappears.

## Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance for a period of time.

Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.).

In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or even reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

**!** The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.  
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.



For this purpose there is a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

**!** Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

## Adaptive cruise control



This system provides the following functions:

- Automatically maintains the vehicle at the speed set by the driver.
- Automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.

With an automatic gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance can cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.



**i** The cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.

## Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system (for versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

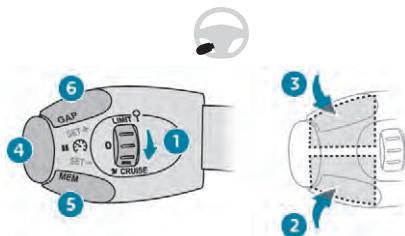
If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

**i** The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking. The driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by keeping both hands on the steering wheel and keeping the feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

## Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary (versions fitted with the automatic gearbox).
11. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

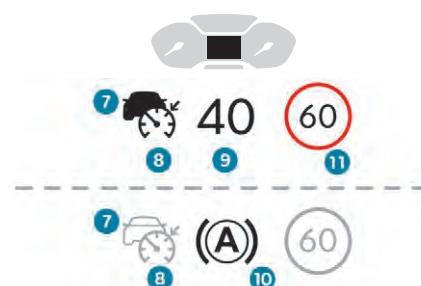
If a vehicle is detected, the symbol 7 is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol 7 is empty.

When the cruise control is in operation, the symbols 7 and 8 are displayed in green. By default, they are displayed in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of vehicle detected by the camera.

## Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/deactivation.

## Switching on

☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "CRUISE" position. The system is paused (grey display).

## With a manual gearbox

With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h):

☞ With the vehicle moving, press one of the buttons 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control starts operating (displayed in green).

### With an automatic gearbox

Mode D or M must be selected.

With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 112 mph (30 km/h and 180 km/h):

- ☞ Accelerate slightly and press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the system starts (green display).

The cruise speed setting then becomes equal to:

- the current speed of your vehicle, if it is over 19 mph (30 km/h),
- 19 mph (30 km/h), if it is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

### Remembering the settings

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.

By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "Normal" (2 dashes). Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

## Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually:

- either by action by the driver:
  - On the button **4** (Pause).
  - On the brake pedal.
  - On the electric parking brake control.
  - On the clutch pedal, by pressing for approximately 10 seconds or more.
  - When changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.

- or automatically:

- If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
- When the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.

**!** When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met again. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

## Reactivating the function

### With manual gearbox

To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

### With automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

**!** As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

## Modification of the speed setting

With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

## From the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

## From the Speed Limit recommendation and recognition system

- ☛ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☛ Make an initial press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☛ Press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

## Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance



Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:

- "Distant" (3 dashes),
- "Normal" (2 dashes),
- "Close" (1 dash).

With the engine running and with the thumbwheel at the "**CRUISE**" position:

- ☛ Press button 6 to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
- ☛ By pressing button 6 repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.

The change then takes effect.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

**i** The selection also applies to the stopping distance (versions with EAT8 automatic gearbox).

## Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

**The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.**

Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

## Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
 70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
 70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
 or  (green)		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). <b>The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.</b>
 or 		"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control. For more information, refer to <b>Operating limits</b> .

#### With an automatic gearbox

Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 or 	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it.

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by pressing one of buttons **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

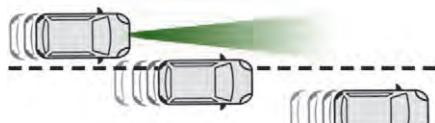
## Operating limits

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

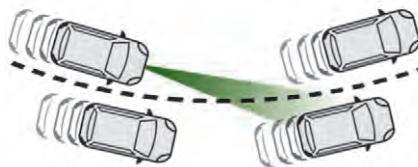
### Cases of non-detection by the camera:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

### When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.

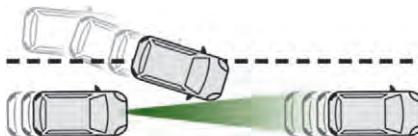


- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

### Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

### The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
- Towing.
- Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera.
- Unfavourable climatic conditions.



Be particularly careful:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall. However, it is strongly recommended that you always adapt the speed and the safety distance in relation to the vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface. Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic (except for versions with EAT8 gearbox), on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the windscreens are damaged or when the brake lamps have failed. In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:

- if the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never place one mat on top of another.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- driving on a winding road,
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

## Malfunction



If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected or if there is a malfunction on the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

## Memorising speeds

Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control only, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.

You can memorise several speed settings for each system.

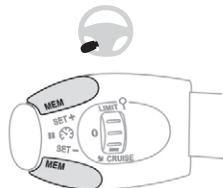
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

## Changing a speed setting

From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select "Driving functions" then "Memorised speed settings".

## "MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the associated section.

## Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance



This system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:

- Distance Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

## Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.

The DSC/ASR systems must not be deactivated.

All passenger seat belts must be fastened.

Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera obstructed (mud, frost, snow, misting, etc.).

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: **"Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide".**

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

**!** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

**i** The system is automatically deactivated after the use of certain "space-saver" type spare wheels is detected (smaller diameter). The system is automatically deactivated after detection of a fault with the brake pedal switch or with at least two brake lamps.

**!** It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

**!** After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Distance Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

### Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.



You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- "Distant",
- "Normal",
- "Close".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



**Level 1 (orange):** visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



**Level 2 (red):** visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

**Level 3:** finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking may be given to confirm the risk of collision.

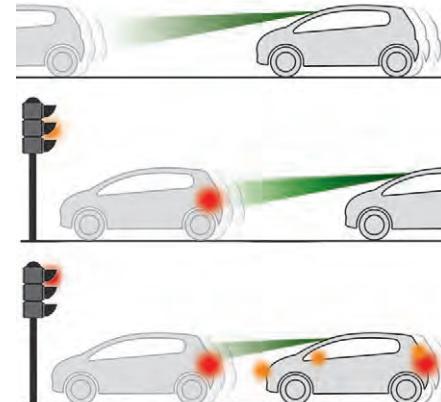


Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly. **Important:** the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

## Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

## Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

## Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.

- The vehicle's speed must be between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.



If the camera has confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.



The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.



Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

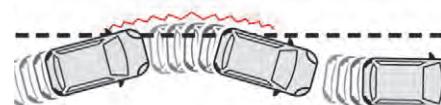
## Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.



If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and restarted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



## Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 mph and 112 mph (65 km/h and 180 km/h). The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands.

The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

The ESC system must be activated and fault-free.



This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance. The driver must remain in control of the vehicle under all circumstances.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example).

It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

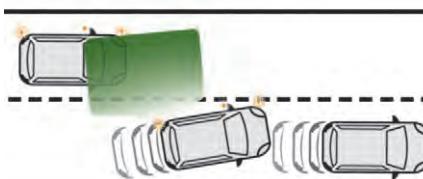
## Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

**i** The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

**!** If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



☞ Press and hold this button to deactivate the system at any time.

The system is **reactivated automatically** every time the ignition is switched on.



Deactivation is signalled by the illumination of the warning lamp in the button and of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Reactivation is achieved by a short press.

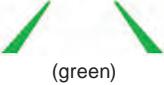
6

## Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF			System deactivated.
ON			System active, conditions not met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h),</li> <li>- no lane marking recognised,</li> <li>- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,</li> <li>- "sporty" driving.</li> </ul>
ON			Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON			Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON			The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 "Take control of the vehicle".	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver.</li> <li>- During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.</li> </ul>

## Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

**i** During a correction, if the driver is inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 10 seconds), a warning message appears. If the driver remains inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 2 more seconds), the correction is interrupted.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:

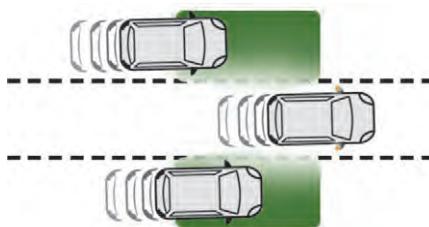
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

## Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Blind Spot Detection



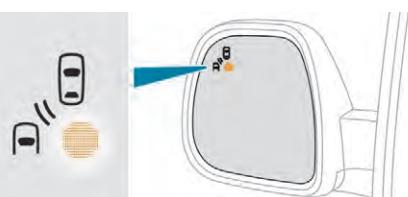
### Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:

- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind

spot angle of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



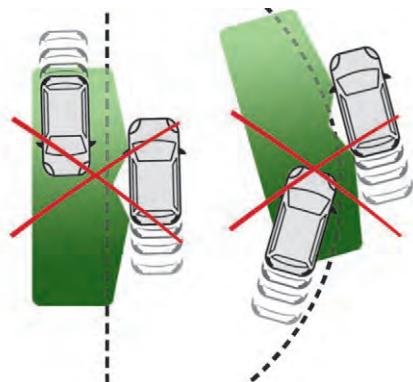
A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken,
- **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

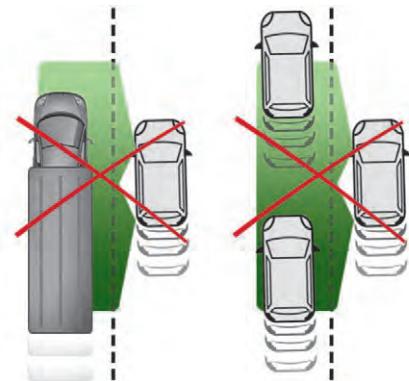
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken returns to the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both detected in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

## Activation/Deactivation



Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.



**i** The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

**i** The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

## Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

**i** The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.



### ! High-pressure washing

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

## Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

Depending on version, the function relies either on the "Driver Attention Warning" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.

! These systems cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must remain in control of their decisions. In no case can these systems keep the driver awake or prevent them from falling asleep at the wheel. It is the driver's responsibility to stop if they feel tired.

## Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.



The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Driver Attention Warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

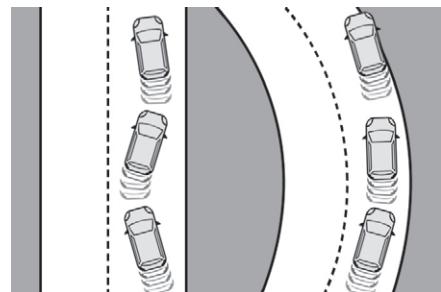


As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.

The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

## Driver Attention Alert

Depending on version, the "Driver Attention Warning" may be combined with the "Driver Attention Alert".



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreens, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed faster than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "Take care!", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

**i** In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

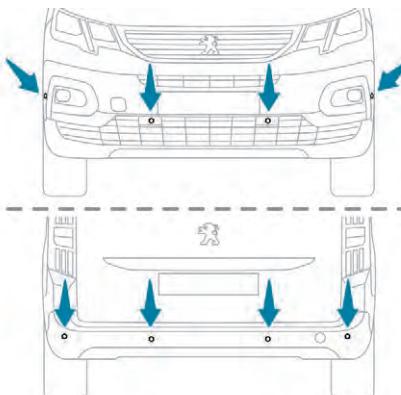
**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreens area located in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

**!** Clean the windscreens regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreens can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreens regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

**!** This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle. They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre. During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

## Parking sensors



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

## Rear parking sensors

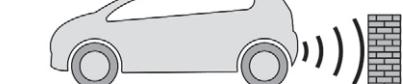
The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

6

## Audible assistance

*BIP... BIP... BIP...*



The function signals the presence of obstacles present both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the orientation of the steering wheel.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

#### **i Adjusting the audible signal**



On versions equipped with PEUGEOT Connect Radio, pressing this button opens the audible signal volume adjustment window.

## Visual assistance



It supplements the audible assistance, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle

(white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

## Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**i** The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

## Side parking sensors



Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.

**!** Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

**!** The objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

## Deactivation/Activation

### Without audio system



- To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is deactivated.

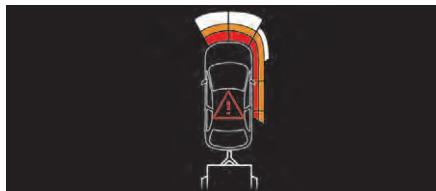
### With audio system or touch screen



The deactivation or activation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.



The state of the function stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



**i** The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space. For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

## Maintenance recommendations

**i** In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

### High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

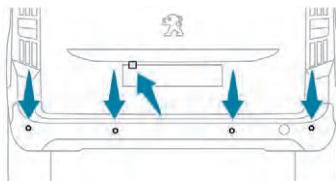
## Operating fault



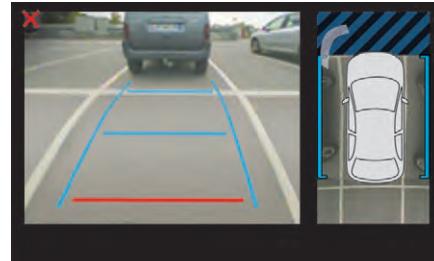
If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Visiopark 1



With the engine running, and as soon as reverse gear is engaged, this system allows views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using a rear camera.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

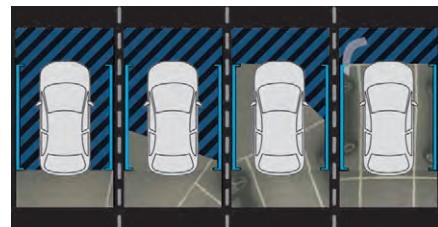
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.



The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Principle of operation



Using the rear camera, the vehicle's surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the blue brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

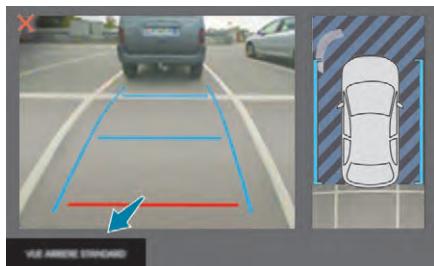
This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

**i** The images provided by the camera may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

## Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

When the sub-menu is displayed, select one of the four views:

-  "Standard view".
-  "180° view".

 "Zoom view".

 **AUTO**  
"AUTO mode".

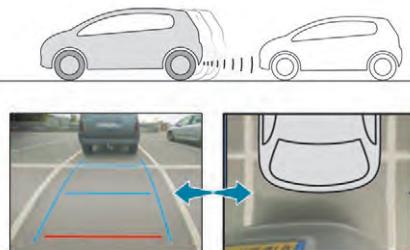
**i** The function will be deactivated:

- If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towing device (vehicle fitted with a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
- Above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- On opening the tailgate.
- When shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

**!** Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly. Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

When washing your vehicle at high-pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the cameras and parking sensors.

## AUTO mode

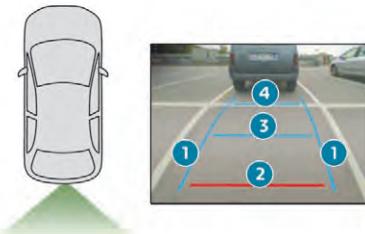


This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

6

## Standard view



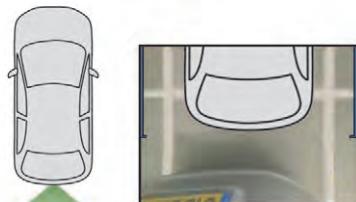
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

## Zoom view

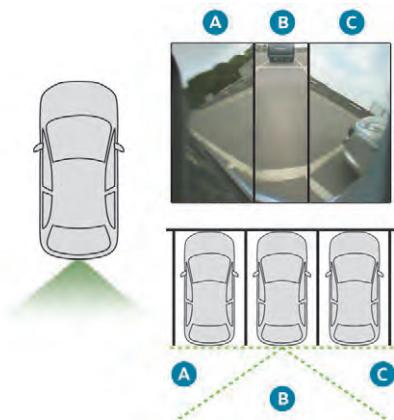


The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

**i** Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.  
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.  
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

## 180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

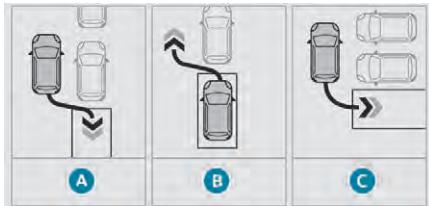
## Park Assist

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in this space while the driver controls the driving direction, engagement of gears, acceleration and braking.

To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of Visiopark 1 and the activation of the parking sensors.

**!** This system is a manoeuvring aid that cannot under any circumstances replace the vigilance of the driver.  
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle. He or she must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before undertaking a manoeuvre and ensure that the space remains clear during the entire manoeuvre.

The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

- A. Parking when entering a "parallel" parking space.
- B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space.
- C. Parking when entering a "bay" parking space.

## Operation

- When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

## Function activation



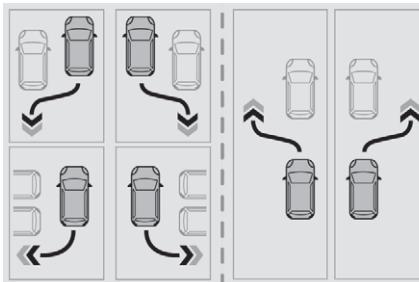
Activation is done via the vehicle configuration menu.



! Activating the function deactivates Blind Spot Detection.

At any time, up to starting the entry manoeuvre or leaving the parking space, pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page deactivates the function.

## Select type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.

- Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.

The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even when searching for an available space.



The selection is accompanied by this indicator lamp coming on.

## Parking space search

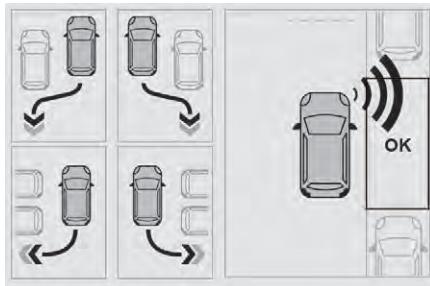
- You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search stops over this limit. The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.

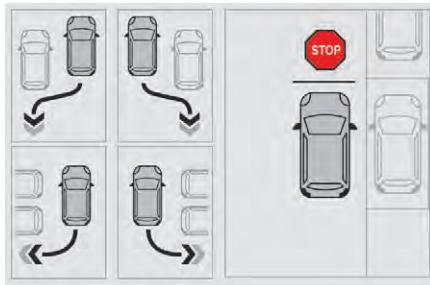
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.

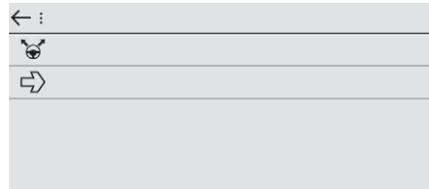


When the system finds an available space, "OK" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

## Preparing for the manoeuvre

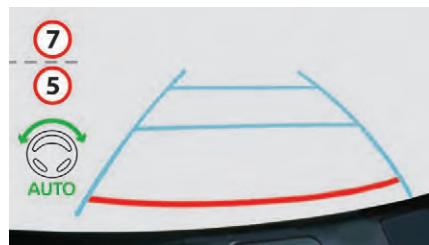


- Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: **"Stop the vehicle"** and the **"STOP"** sign, accompanied by an audible signal.



Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

- To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instruction.



The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of this page, with the message **"Manoeuvre under way"**, accompanied by an audible signal.

Reversing is indicated by this message: **"Release the steering wheel, reverse".**

Visiopark 1 and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle during the manoeuvre.

## During the manoeuvre

The system takes over the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on manoeuvre direction when starting the entry and exit parallel parking manoeuvres and for all entry manoeuvres for bay parking.

There instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:



The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress (green).



Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of the vehicle).

The maximum speed limit indications during the manoeuvres are signalled by these symbols:



5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.

## 5

3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During a manoeuvre, the steering wheel turns quickly: do not hold the steering wheel, do not place your hand between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for anything likely to block the manoeuvre (loose and bulky clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – Risks of injury! It is the driver's responsibility to monitor the state of the traffic continuously, especially vehicles coming towards you. The driver should check that no object or person can hinder the advance of the vehicle.

! The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be interrupted definitively at any time, either by the driver or by the system automatically.

By the driver's action:

- taking over control of the steering,
- activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre,
- unfastening the driver's seat belt,
- switching off the ignition.

Interruption by the system:

- exceeding the speed limit: 7 km/h or 5 mph during the parking space entry manoeuvres and 5 km/h or 3 mph during the parking space exit manoeuvres,
- triggering the anti-slip regulation on a slippery road,
- opening a door or the boot,
- stalling the engine,
- system malfunction,
- after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.

Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.

The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "Manoeuvre cancelled" message on the touch screen.

A message encourages the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



The function is deactivated after a few seconds, this warning lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

## End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.

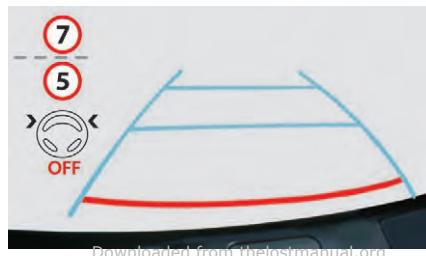
The manoeuvring symbol is displayed in red accompanied by the "Manoeuvre completed" message on the touch screen.



Deactivation of the function is confirmed by this indicator lamp going off, accompanied by an audible signal.

If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

## 6



## Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space was found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
- The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensor settings which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be falsified.

- If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

The vehicle's sensors and camera(s) may be impaired by:

- accumulated snow or fallen leaves on the road,
- adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, falling snow),
- noise interference from noisy vehicles and machinery (lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.).

**!** Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:

- Alongside a soft shoulder (ditch, etc.) or quay or on a cliff edge.
- When the road surface is slippery (ice, etc.)

**!** Do not use the function in presence of one of the following malfunctions:

- Under-inflation of a tyre.
- If one of the bumpers is damaged,
- If one of the cameras is faulty.

**!** Do not use the function in presence of one of the following modifications:

- When carrying an object extending beyond the vehicle size (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
- With a non-approved towball in place.
- With snow chains fitted.
- When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
- After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection, etc.).
- If the sensors have been repainted outside the PEUGEOT dealer network.
- With sensors not approved for your vehicle.

## Maintenance recommendations

- Regularly check that the sensors and cameras are clean.  
If necessary, clean the camera lenses with a soft, dry cloth.
- If using a high-pressure washer, do not direct the spray less than 30 cm from the sensors and cameras.
- In bad weather, or during the winter, ensure that the sensors and cameras are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

## Operating faults



When the function is not activated, this warning lamp temporarily flashing and an audible signal indicate a system fault.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



If the fault in the parking sensors, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, occurs during use, it causes the function to deactivate.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values**.

**which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.



The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.



The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.



### Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

## Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**!** The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),
- or
- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,
- or
- ☞ if it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

**i** The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

## Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

**!** Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

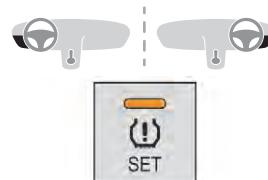
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The system is initialised with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

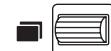
**i** The new pressure parameters saved are considered reference values by the system.

## Without audio system



- ☞ Press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

## With audio system or touch screen



The reinitialisation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.



## Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.



# PEUGEOT & TOTAL

## A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOT TOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017. To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

**TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.**

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and keeps your engine clean.



PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

Downloaded from [thelostmanual.org](http://thelostmanual.org)



## Compatibility of fuels

### Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:



E5 Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.



**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.



**B10** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

**XTL** Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

**B20** B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 can be used with your Diesel engine. However, the use of this fuel, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

**B30**

**i** The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

### Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

### Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:



B7 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

**!** The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

### Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

## Fuel tank

### Tank capacity:

- around **60 litres** (petrol).
- around **53 litres** (Diesel).

## Opening the fuel filler flap

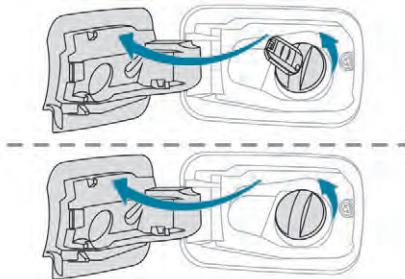
- ☞ You must switch off the engine.
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ Open the fuel filler flap.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

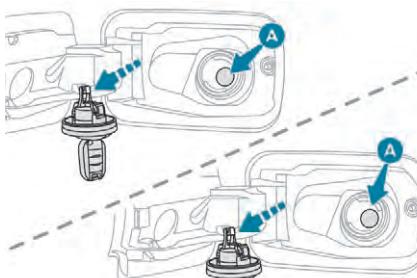
At least 6 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).

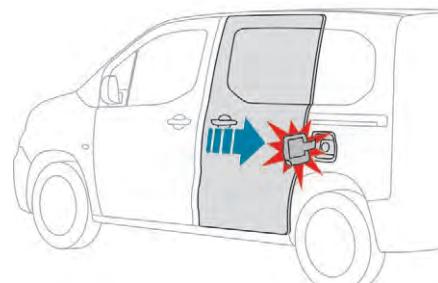


- ☞ If your vehicle has a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn it to the left.



- ☞ Remove the filler cap, then place it on the carrier located on the filler flap.
- ☞ Introduce the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the metal non-return valve A).

- ☞ Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap turning it to the right.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! If the fuel filler flap is open and you open the left side door, a mechanism prevents it being opened. The door can be opened half way however. Close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**!** If you have added the wrong fuel, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

## Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, **less than 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank. You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

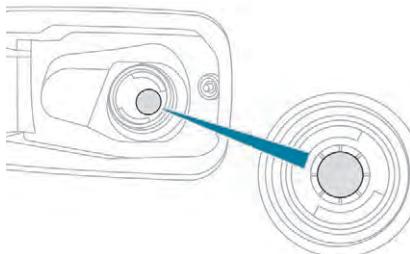
## Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

## Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

## Driving abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

## Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**!** Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

## Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size (mm)
195/65 R15	9
205/60 R16	
205/55 R17	
215/65 R16	
215/60 R17	cannot be fitted with chains

You can also use snow socks.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Towing device

### Load distribution

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

**i** Use towing devices and their original harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically deactivated if an approved towing device is used.

**!** Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

**Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).**

**!** Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

## Towing devices

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be fitted with one of the following towing devices:

**Approval No.: E1 R55 (reference 1)**

Type of towing device	Mounting position then towing device reference	
	Towing device fixed at the top	Towing device fixed at the bottom
Swan neck	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Standard swan neck L1</li> <li>- Standard swan neck L2</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cross (heavy-duty) swan neck L1</li> <li>- Cross (heavy-duty) swan neck L2</li> </ul>
Quickly detachable towball	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Standard quickly detachable towball L1</li> <li>- Standard quickly detachable towball L2</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cross (heavy-duty) quickly detachable towball L1</li> <li>- Cross (heavy-duty) quickly detachable towball L2</li> </ul>

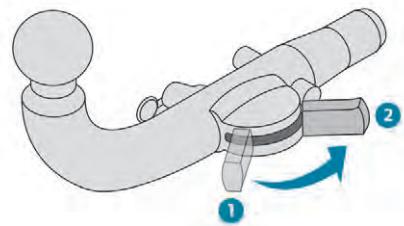
**i** For more information on your towing device, refer to the user guide supplied with this equipment.

## Towing device with quickly detachable towball

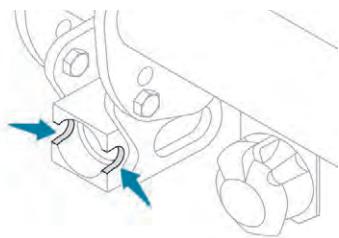
No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.

**i** Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

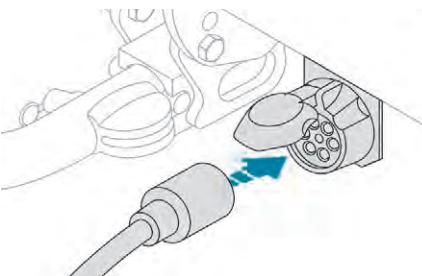
### Fitting



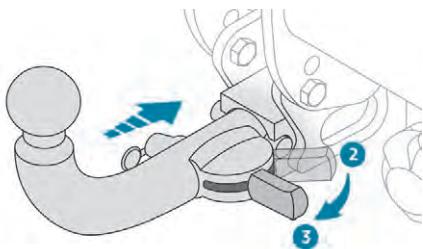
☞ On the towball, move the lever from position **1** to position **2**.



- Before fitting the towball, check that the contact points, shown by arrows, are clean. Use a soft, clean cloth.



- Connect the trailer plug to the 13-pin socket provided next to the carrier.
- Secure the trailer by connecting its safety cable to the hoop provided on the carrier.



- Fit the end of the towball into the carrier, located underneath the rear bumper, as far as it can go.
- Secure the towball correctly by moving the lever to position 3 ("locked" position).

! If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach. This may cause an accident. Always lock the towball in accordance with the descriptions. Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving. Remove the towball if it is not being used. Before starting the vehicle, check that the trailer lamps are working correctly. Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

## Removing

- On the towball, move the lever from position 3 to position 2.
- Remove the towball by pulling it towards you.
- Once the towball has been removed, move the lever from position 2 to position 1.

! Connect the trailer plug **with the engine off**. If you connect the trailer plug in the minutes after you have switched off the ignition, **do not touch** the exhaust – risk of burns!

! **Carrier systems (box or bicycle carrier)** Always comply with the maximum load authorised on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may detach from the vehicle and so cause a serious accident.

For more information about the **Engine technical data and towed loads** and particularly the maximum load applied on the towing device, refer to the corresponding section.

! Remove the quickly detachable towball when not towing a trailer.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

## Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

## Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Roof bars/Roof rack

### ! Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides. Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load firmly.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.

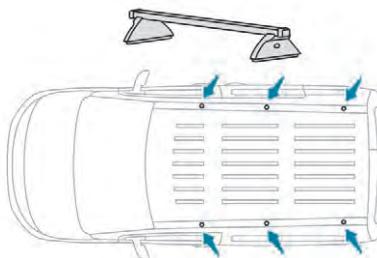
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars and racks, at least before each trip.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

## Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.



To fit the transverse roof bars or a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:

- ☞ Remove the fixing covers installed on the vehicle.
- ☞ Put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one.
- ☞ Ensure that the roof bars or the roof rack are correctly fitted (by shaking them).

The bars are adaptable for each fixing point.

**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

**!** When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.

Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

**!** In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:

- Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.
- Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
- Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.
- An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.
- A steel rack: **115 kg**.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

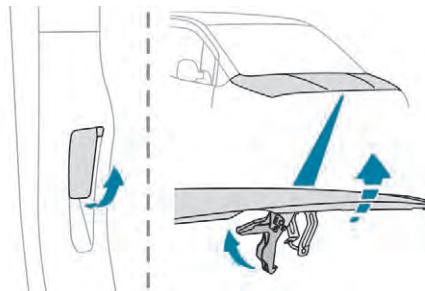


In the event of loading a 7-seat model (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:

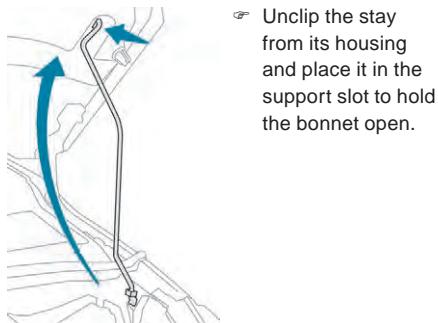
- Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
- An aluminium rack: **70 kg**.
- A steel rack: **65 kg**.

## Opening

- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.
- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



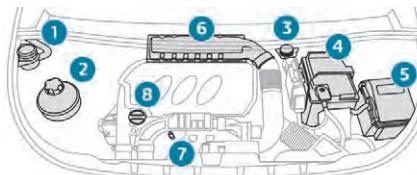
## Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

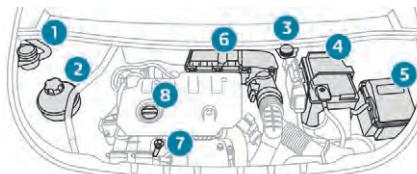
**!** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

## Engines

### Petrol



### Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.

The locations of the dipstick and engine oil filler cap may vary.

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.

**!** The Diesel circuit is under very high pressure.

All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**!** Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.  
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

 Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.  
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

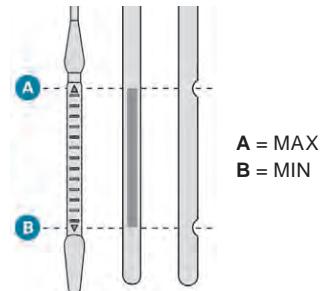
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

### Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **mark A** or below the **mark B**, do not start the engine.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

### Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

7

### Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- Add more oil if necessary.
- After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

 After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

 **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

## Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Tank capacity:

- 5.3 litres for the "very cold climate" versions.
- 2.2 litres for other versions.

## Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

## Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

or




### Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### AdBlue level

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.

For more information on **AdBlue and the SCR system**, and in particular topping it up, refer to the corresponding section.

### Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

**i** For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

### Cabin filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

**i** A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

7

### Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

## Particle filter (Diesel)

 The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

**or**



**i** Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For all information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric parking brake



This system does not require any specific check. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.

Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident! Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.



Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.



For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.



Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

## SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

### **Freezing of the AdBlue®**

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

## **Supply of AdBlue®**

**!** It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

**!** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:

- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or in a qualified workshop.

**!** You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

**!** Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## **Recommendations on storage**

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

**!** Never keep containers or bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

## **Precautions in use**

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of ammonia being released cannot be discounted: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

**!** Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

## **Procedure**

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank.

Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

**!** In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

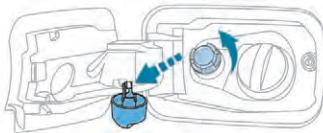
! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

## Access to the AdBlue® tank

A blue cap behind the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.

**Read the following procedure carefully to be able to top up properly.**



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the AdBlue® blue filler cap anti-clockwise.

- ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- Or
- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! **Important:**  
To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:

- ☞ To do a top-up between 10 and 13 litres using the AdBlue® bottle.
- Or
- ☞ If filling in a service station, stop after the third automatic shut-off of the nozzle.

- ☞ After refilling, carry out the same operations in reverse order.

! **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.**

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

## Advice on care

General recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

! Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle:

- Do not clean your lamps with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products. Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on stubborn dirt, avoid prolonged use on the headlamps, the lamps and their edges to avoid damaging their lacquer finish and seals.
- Never use an abrasive sponge to clean persistent dirt, as this may scratch the paint surface. Use a soft cloth with soapy water instead.
- When washing your vehicle, never clean the interior with a water jet.
- When washing your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock your doors and, depending on version, remove the key.
- Never use high-pressure washing to clean the engine compartment, in order to avoid damaging the electrical units.
- Liquids carried in an open vessel (e.g. a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting

a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Depending on version, in order to avoid damaging or unpeeling the stickers on the bodywork, you are strongly advised against using high-pressure washing to wash your vehicle. It is recommended that you wash it using a high-flow water jet and rinse the vehicle down using demineralised water. Only a microfibre cloth is recommended for wiping your vehicle; it must be clean and used gently.

! It is always preferable to have paint repairs carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

**i** For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## BlueHDI engines

- ☛ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel fuel.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☛ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☛ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☛ Operate the starter to run the engine.

## Other engines

- ☛ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel fuel.
- ☛ Open the bonnet.
- ☛ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



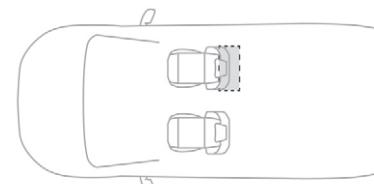
- ☛ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance on the first press).
- ☛ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☛ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☛ Put the cover back in place and clip it in.
- ☛ Close the bonnet again.

## Tool kit

- ☛ For easier access, move the seat(s) forward.

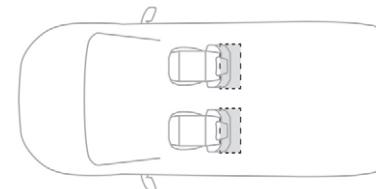
## Access to the tools

### With temporary puncture repair kit



The kit is located under the right-hand front seat.

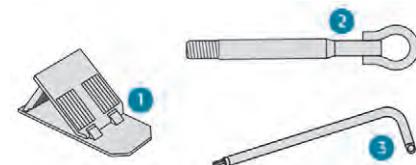
## With spare wheel



The jack is located under the right-hand front seat.

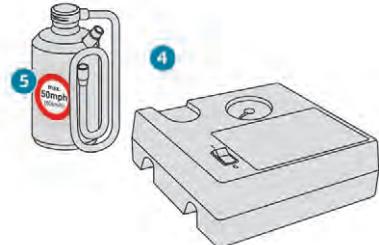
The tools are located under the left-hand front seat.

## Details of the tool kit



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle.
2. Removable towing eye.
3. Torx key.  
Permits removal of the rear lamps in order to change a bulb.

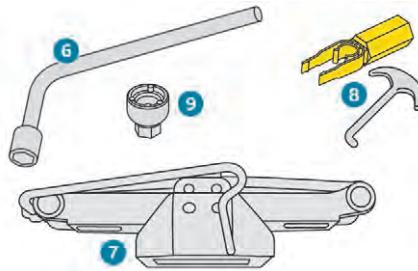
## With temporary puncture repair kit



4. Temporary puncture repair kit.  
Contains a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant to temporarily repair the wheel and adjust the tyre pressure.
5. Speed limit sticker.

**i** For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

## With a spare wheel



6. Wheelbrace.  
For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
7. Jack.  
Used to raise the vehicle.
8. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tools (depending on equipment).  
If present on your vehicle, it removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
9. Socket for the wheel security bolts.  
Used for adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

**i** For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.

Do not use them for any other purposes.

**i** The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.  
The jack does not require any maintenance.  
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

**i** Certain parts of the jack such as the screw thread or the joints could cause injury: avoid touching them.  
Carefully remove all traces of lubrication grease.

## Temporary puncture repair kit

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

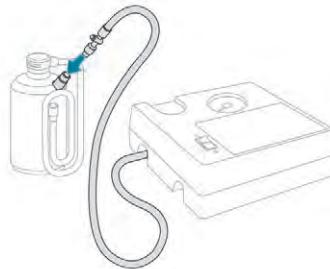
**i** It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

**i** The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair a damaged tyre.

**i** For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

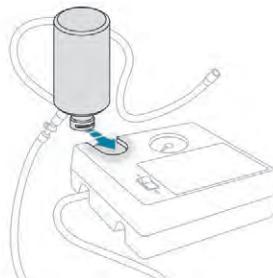
## Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



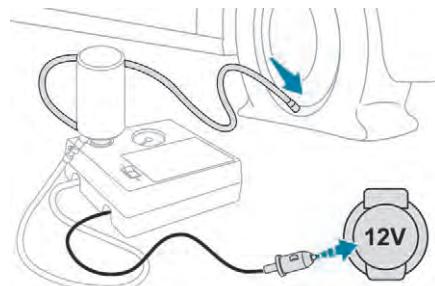
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

**!** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



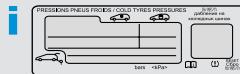
- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

**!** Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used.

- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

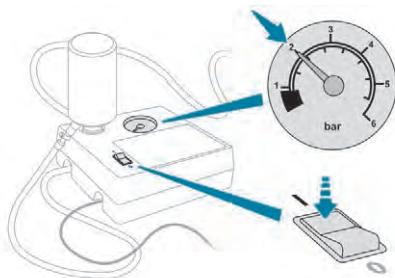


! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☛ Switch on the ignition.



☛ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "I" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☛ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☛ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☛ Replace the cap on the valve.
- ☛ Remove the kit.
- ☛ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



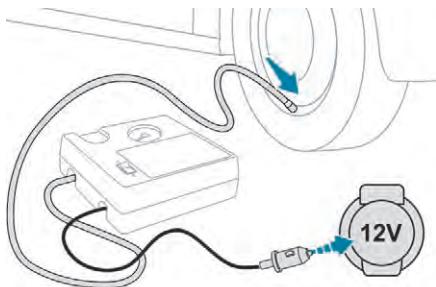
- ☛ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☛ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

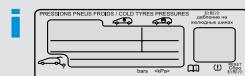
! You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- ☛ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- ☛ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

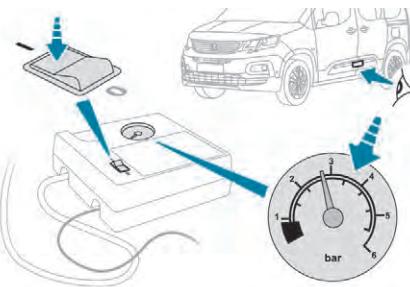


- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

**!** Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

**!** If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

**!** Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

**!** Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Spare wheel

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

**i** For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

## Access to the spare wheel

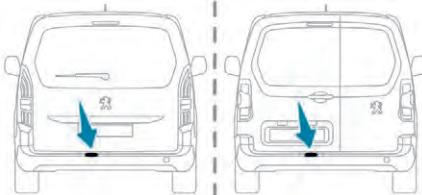
- Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.



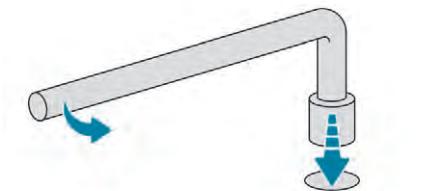
- If your vehicle is fitted with a towing device, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

## Remove the spare wheel from the carrier

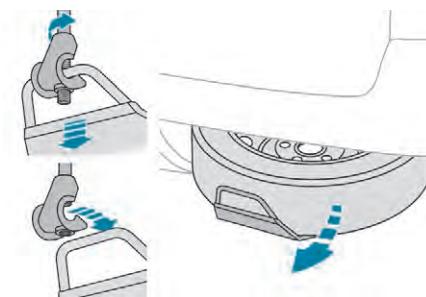
- Depending on version, open the tailgate or the side-hinged doors.



- Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.

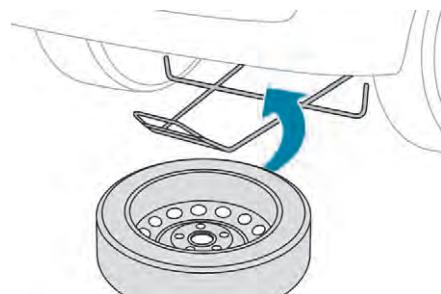


- Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



- Release the carrier from the hook, take the spare wheel and place it next to the wheel to be changed.

## Refit the spare wheel in the carrier



- Position the wheel facing the carrier.
- Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately from left to right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.
- Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace until the bolt is completely tight.

## Removing a wheel

### **i** Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.

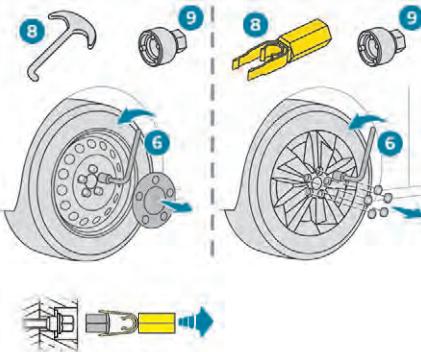
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.

Apply the parking brake and check that the indicator lamp is on in the instrument panel.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

With an electric parking brake, place a chock against the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being replaced.



- ☞ With a steel wheel, remove the trim using tool **8**.
- ☞ With an alloy wheel, remove the cap from each of the bolts using tool **8**.
- ☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **9** to wheelbrace **6** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **6**.

### **i** Wheel with wheel trim

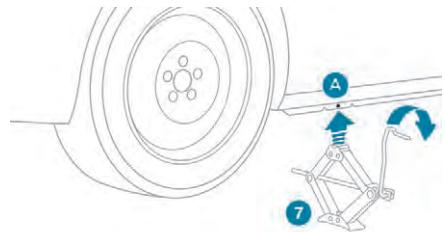
**When removing the wheel**, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

### **!** Do not use:

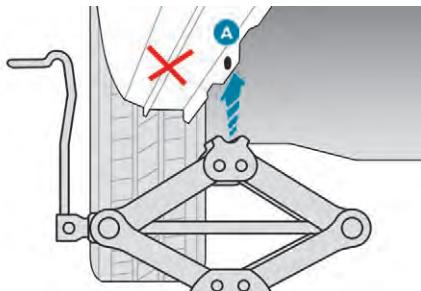
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.



- ☞ Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



**8**

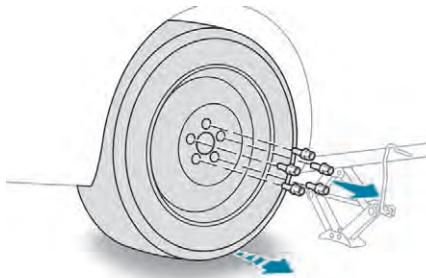


- Extend jack **7** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact surface **A** or **B** of the vehicle must be correctly engaged in the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

**!** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – risk of injury!

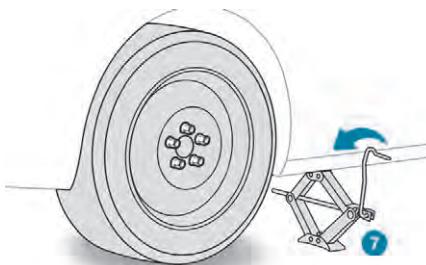
Take care to place the jack only at the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact point of the vehicle is centred on the jack head. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping – risk of injury!

It is prohibited to lie down on the ground to position yourself underneath the vehicle.

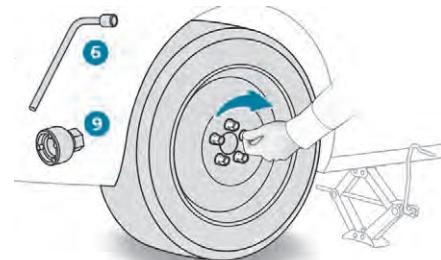


- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

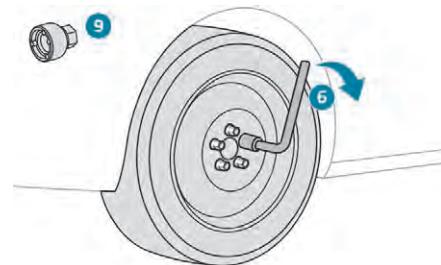
## Fitting a wheel



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with security socket **9**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **6** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **7** and detach it.



- If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with security socket **9**.
- Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **6** only.
- Store the tools.



### **i** Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on refitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

### **!** After changing a wheel

Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier. Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

**i** Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

**i** If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i** Wheel with trim

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

## Changing a bulb

**!** The lamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

**!** Changing a bulb should only be done after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the lamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification.

### ! Light-emitting diodes (LED)

For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### i Halogen bulbs

To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.



**STOP & START SYSTEM**

**Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs**  
With the engine warm, proceed with caution – risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan – risk of strangulation!

### ! After changing a bulb

When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

### Type C



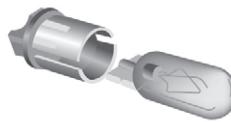
Halogen bulb: release the retaining spring from its housing.

### Type D



Halogen bulb: turn the bulb anti-clockwise.

### Type A



All glass bulb: pull gently as it is fitted by pressure.

### Type B



Bayonet bulb: press on the bulb then turn it anti-clockwise.

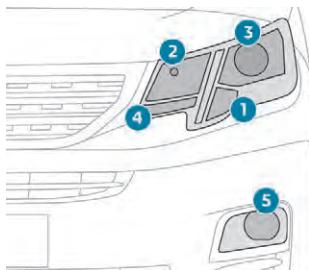
**!** Halogen bulbs must be changed with the lamp off for a few minutes (risk of severe burns). Do not touch the bulb directly, use a lint-free cloth.

**i** When each operation has been completed, check the operation of the lighting.

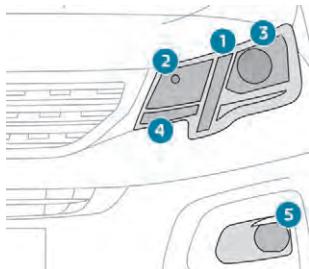
## Front lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

### Model A



### Model B



#### 1. Sidelamps/daytime running lamps.

**Type A**, W21/5W or LED (depending on version)

#### 2. Main beam headlamps.

**Type C**, H1

#### 3. Dipped beam headlamps.

**Type C**, H7

#### 4. Direction indicator.

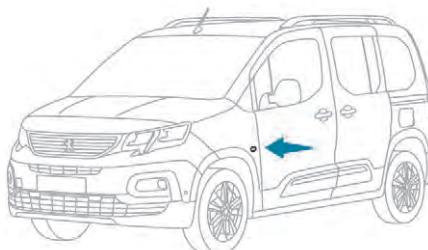
**Type B**, PY21W

#### 5. Foglamp.

**Type D**, H11

## Direction indicator side repeater

**Type A**, WY5W-5W (amber)

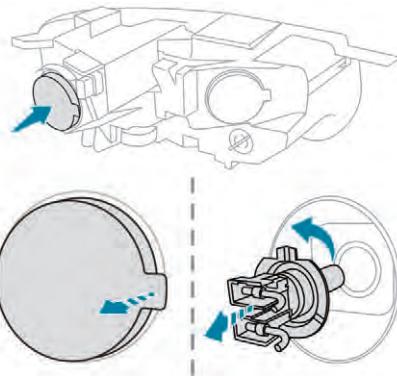


- Push the repeater towards the rear and disengage it.
- When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then bring it towards the rear.

Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

## Dipped beam headlamps

**Type C**, H7



☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.

☞ Turn the unit in relation to the support.

☞ Pull the bulb connector.

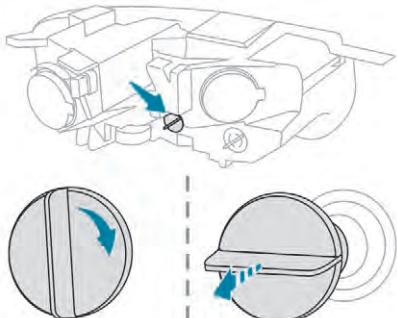
☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Be sure to refit the protection cover keeping the tab accessible.

## Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps (model A)

Type A, W21/5W



- ☞ Turn the connector a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Pull the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

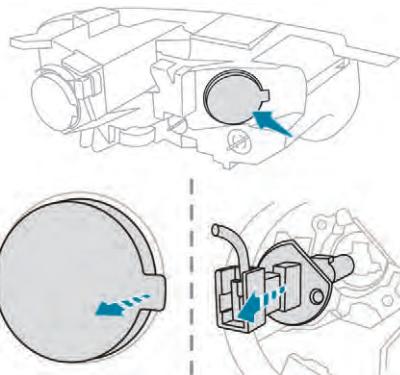
## Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps (model B)

### ! Light-emitting diodes (LED)

For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Main beam headlamps

Type C, H1



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Unclip the unit in relation to the support.
- ☞ Pull the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

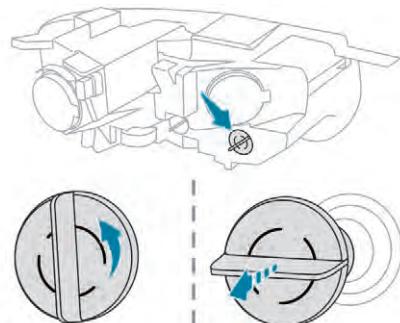
To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Be sure to refit the protection cover keeping the tab accessible.

## Direction indicators

Type B, PY21W

**i** Rapid flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



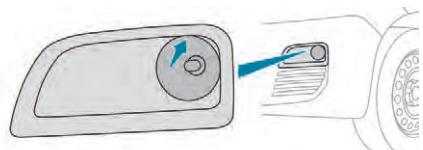
- ☞ Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Pull the unit in relation to the support.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

## Front foglamps

Type D, H11

### Model A



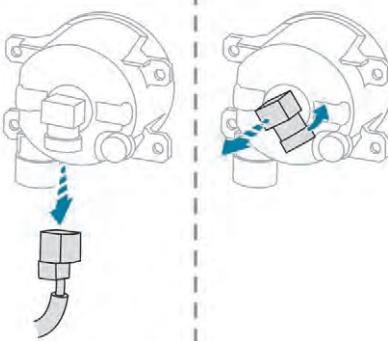
### Model B



- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the lamp and the cover.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the cover.



- ☞ Remove the two fastening screws of the module.
- ☞ Remove the module from its housing.



- ☞ Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the bulb holder.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

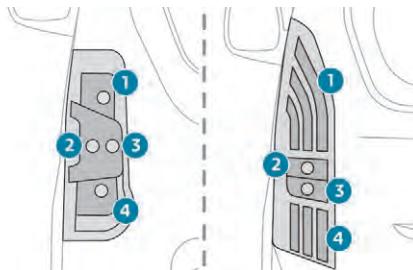
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

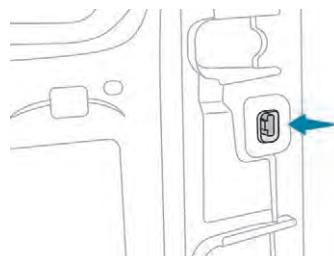
## Rear lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

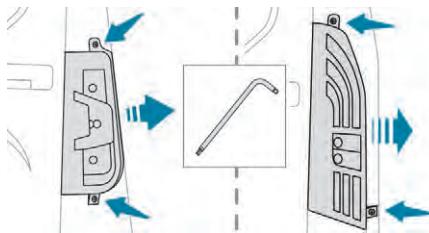
## With side-hinged doors/tailgate



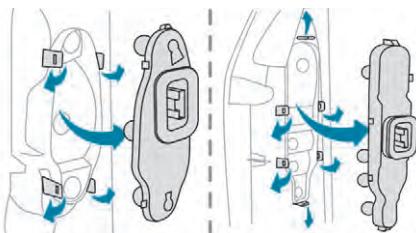
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.  
**Type B, P21/5W**
2. Direction indicators.  
**Type B, PY21W (amber)**
3. Reversing lamps.  
**Type B, P21W**
4. Foglamps.  
**Type B, P21W**



- ☞ From the inside, disconnect the electrical connector at the rear of the lamps.



- Remove the two fixing bolts using the Torx key provided in your vehicle. For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.
- From the outside, pull the whole lamp unit towards you (with **side-hinged doors**) or towards the centre of the vehicle (with **tailgate**).



- Move aside the tabs, then extract the bulb holder.
- Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

- Change the bulb. To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Take care to reposition the tabs and the supply wire correctly to avoid trapping the wire.

**i** After changing a rear direction indicator bulb, the reinitialisation time is approximately 2 minutes or more.

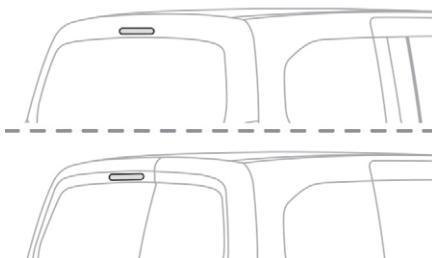
## With tailgate



- Remove the plastic lens using a screwdriver.
- Change the bulb.
- Refit the plastic lens and press on it.

## Third brake lamp

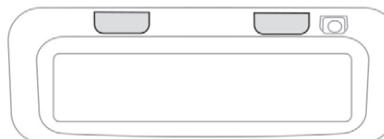
Type A, W16W – 16W



## Number plate lamps

Type A, W5W – 5W

## With side-hinged doors

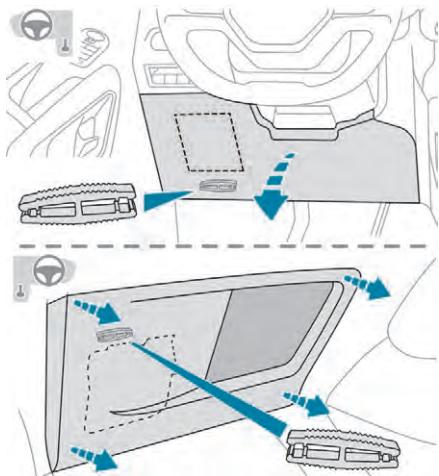


- Unclip the interior trim.
- Disconnect the connector by moving aside its tab.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Change the bulb.
- Put the bulb holder back in place and reconnect the connector.
- Put the trim back in place.

- Unscrew the two nuts.
- Push the pins.
- If necessary, disconnect the connector to remove the lamp.
- Change the bulb.

## Changing a fuse

### Access to the tool kit



The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

## Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the faulty fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



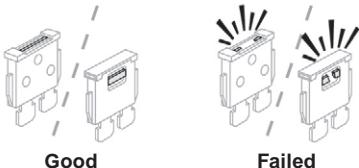
**Tweezers**

! Replacement with a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

**i** For more information on installing a towing device or equipment of the TAXI type, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

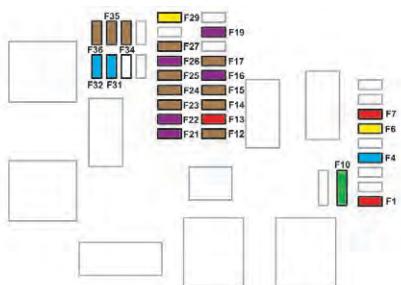
## Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

### Access to the fuses

☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.

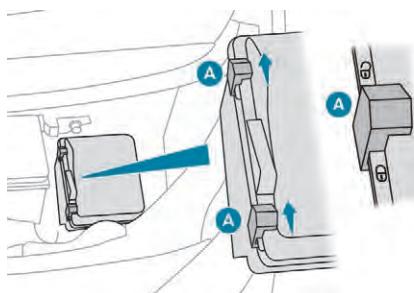


Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
<b>F1</b>	<b>10</b>	Wireless smartphone charger, interior electrochrome rear view mirror.
<b>F4</b>	<b>15</b>	Horn.
<b>F6</b>	<b>20</b>	Screenwash pump.
<b>F7</b>	<b>10</b>	12 V socket (rear).
<b>F10</b>	<b>30</b>	Electric locks module.
<b>F13</b>	<b>10</b>	Telematics and radio controls.
<b>F14</b>	<b>5</b>	Alarm, advanced telematic unit.
<b>F19</b>	<b>3</b>	Trailer interface unit.
<b>F23</b>	<b>5</b>	Generic trailer interface unit.
<b>F27</b>	<b>5</b>	Additional heating.
<b>F29</b>	<b>20</b>	Audio system, touch screen.
<b>F31</b>	<b>15</b>	Audio system (as an accessory).
<b>F32</b>	<b>15</b>	12 V socket (front).
<b>F34</b>	<b>5</b>	Mirrors control.
<b>F36</b>	<b>5</b>	USB socket.

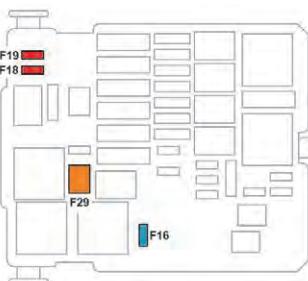
## Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

### Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches A.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches A, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F16	15	Front foglamp.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F29	40	Windscreen wipers.

## 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

## Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

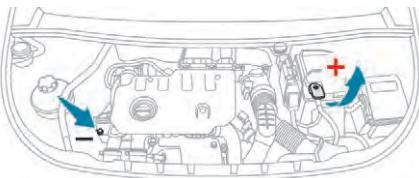


Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

- Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- Secure the bonnet stay.



The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.  
A remote earth point is provided at the front of the vehicle.

**i** For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

**!** Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

First check that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).

Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.

Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.

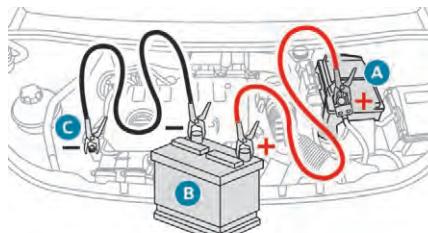
Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

Wait for it to return to idle.

Disconnect the jump lead cables **in reverse order**.

Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.



Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

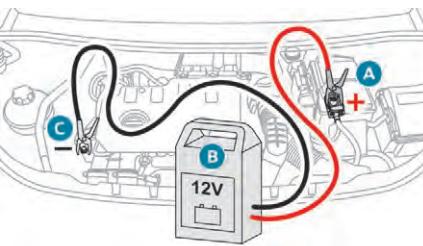
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you plan to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

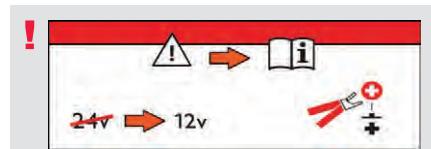
**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lamps, wipers, etc.).



- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

**!** Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

## Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

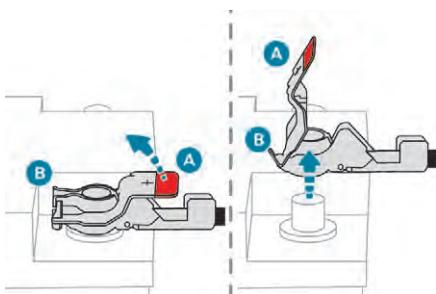
- ☞ close all of the accesses (doors, tailgate, windows, roof),

- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

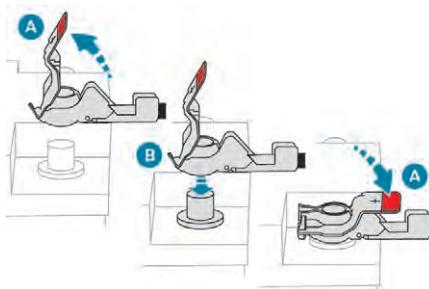
## Quick-release terminal clamp

### Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever A fully to release the clamp B.
- Remove the clamp B by lifting it off.

### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever A fully.
- Replace the open clamp B on the (+) terminal.
- Push the clamp B fully down.
- Lower the lever A to lock the clamp B.

**!** Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

### Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must reinitialise certain systems yourself, such as:

- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the electric doors,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the next engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

## Towing

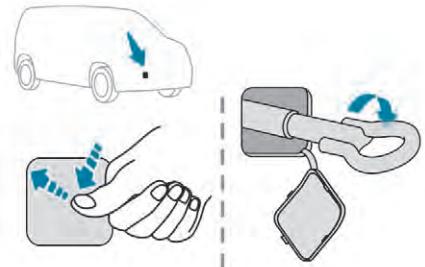
Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

## Access to the eye

**i** For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ! With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.
- Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

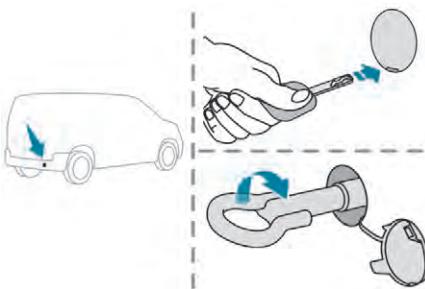
## Towing your vehicle



- In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.

- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- In the rear bumper, place the key in the notch located under the flap.
- Turn the key and then open the flap.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

### General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar: rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

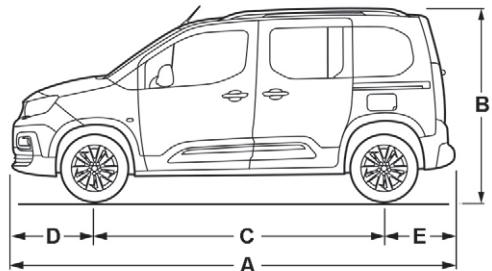
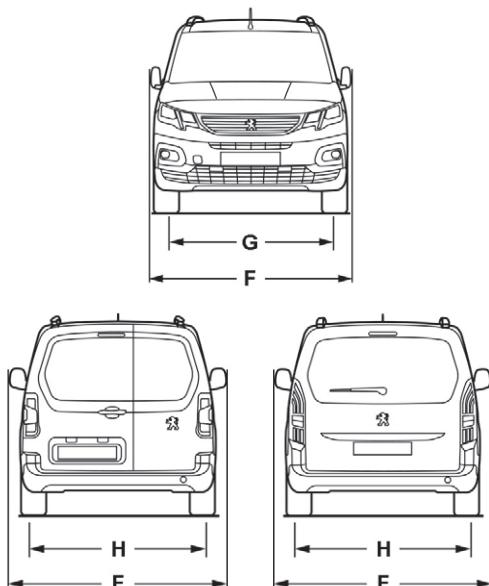
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or main road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

## Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

Your vehicle is available in two lengths (Standard and Long).

The height may vary according to wheel diameters.



	Vehicle length	
	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
A	Overall length	4,403 4,753
B	Without roof bars	1,833 to 1,837 1,836 to 1,840
	With roof bars	1,874 to 1,878 1,879 to 1,882
C	Wheelbase	2,785 2,975
D	Front overhang	892
E	Rear overhang	726 886
F	Folded	1,921
	Unfolded	2,107
G	Front track width	1,553
H	Rear track width	1,567

## Engine technical data and towed loads

### Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

**i** The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

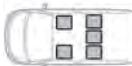
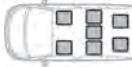
**!** When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

**!** Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.  
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

## Engines and towed loads – PETROL

<b>Engine</b>	VTi 115 BVM5	
<b>Gearbox</b>	Manual 5-speed	
<b>Code</b>	EF5 (EC5F BE)	
<b>Length</b>	Standard (L1)	
<b>Model code</b>	<b>5 seats</b>	
	<b>7 seats</b>	
<b>Cubic capacity (cm<sup>3</sup>)</b>	1,587	
<b>Max. power: EC standard (kW)</b>	85	
<b>Fuel</b>	Unleaded	
<b>Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)</b>	<b>5 seats</b>	1,000
	<b>7 seats</b>	/
<b>Unbraked trailer (kg)</b>	<b>5 seats</b>	720
	<b>7 seats</b>	/
<b>Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)</b>	<b>5 seats</b>	60
	<b>7 seats</b>	/

## Engines and towed loads – PETROL EURO 6.2

Engine		PureTech 110 S&S BVM6				PureTech 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		LGK (EB2ADT MB6 STTD – TBC)		LGK (EB2ADT MB6 STTD)		LH1 (EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD)	
Length		Standard (L1)	Long (L2)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
Model code	5 seats		ERHNPJ-A	ERHNPJ-C	ERHNPJ-A	ERHNPJ-C	
	7 seats		ERHNPJ-B	ERHNPJ-D	ERHNPJ-B	ERHNPJ-D	
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )		1,199		1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		81		81		96	
Fuel		Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,150	1,100	1,150	1,100	1,200	1,150
	7 seats	1,000	950	1,000	950	1,050	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	720	750	710	750	730	750
	7 seats	750		750		750	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74	74	74	74
	7 seats	70	50	70	50	70	50

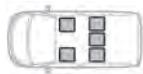
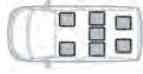
## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Engine		HDI 75 BVM5	HDI 92 S&S BVM5	
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	
Code		BG5 (DV6E BE)	BF5 (DV6D BE)	
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
Model code	5 seats			
	7 seats			
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )		1,560	1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		55	68	
Fuel		Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,000	1,100	1,050
	7 seats	/	950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	720	720	750
	7 seats	/	750	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74
	7 seats	/	50	50

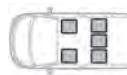
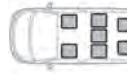
## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.1

Engine		BlueHDi 75 BVM5	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5	
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	
Code		KM5 (DV6FE BE)	KEJ (DV6FD BE STTD)	
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
Model code	5 seats		ECBHWB-A	ECBHYB-A
	7 seats		ECBHWB-B	ECBHYB-B
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )		1,560	1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		55	73	
Fuel		Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,000	1,100	1,050
	7 seats	/	950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	730	730	750
	7 seats	/	750	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74
	7 seats	/	50	50

## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.2

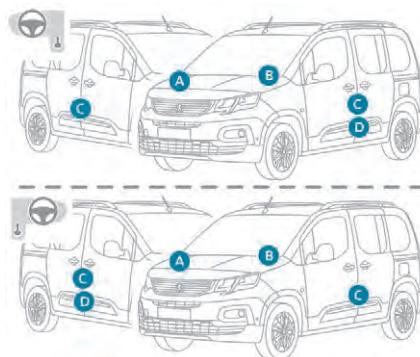
Engine	BlueHDI 75 BVM5	BlueHDI 100 S&S BVM5		BlueHDI 100 BVM5	
Gearbox	Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed		Manual 5-speed	
Code	MJ5 (DV5RE BE)	MDJ (DV5RD BE STTD – TBC)		MD5 (DV5RD BE)	
Length	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
Model code	5 seats 	ECYHWC-A	ECYHYC-A	ECYHYC-C	ECYHYC-A
	7 seats 	ECYHWC-B	ECYHYC-B	ECYHYC-D	ECYHYC-B
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,499	1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	55	75		75	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,000	1,300	1,250	1,300
	7 seats	/	1,150	1,050	1,150
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	730	740	750	730
	7 seats	/	750		750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74	74
	7 seats	/	50	50	50

## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.2

Engine		BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		MAK (DV5RC ML6 STTD)		MA1 (DV5RC ATN8 STTD)	
Length		Standard (L1)	Long (L2)	Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
Model code	5 seats 	ECYHZJ-A	ECYHZJ-C	ECYHZR-A	ECYHZR-C
	7 seats 	ECYHZJ-B	ECYHZJ-D	ECYHZR-B	ECYHZR-D
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )		1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		96		96	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats	1,500	1,450	1,300	1,225
	7 seats	1,350	1,250	1,150	1,050
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats	750	750	750	750
	7 seats				
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	5 seats	74	74	74	74
	7 seats	50	50	50	50

## Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and localisation of your vehicle.



### A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

### B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the windscreen lower cross member.

This number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreen.

### C. Manufacturer's label.

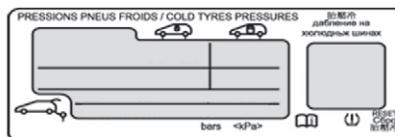
This tamperproof label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,

- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

**i** The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

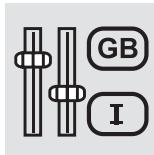
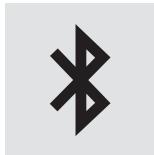
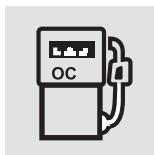
### D. Tyre/paint label.



This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

# Bluetooth® audio system



## Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	6
Media	7
Telephone	10
Frequently asked questions	14

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**!** Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

**i** To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

## First steps



Press: On/Off.  
Rotate: adjust volume.

**SRC** Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).  
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:  
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.  
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

### LIST

**Radio:**  
Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.  
**Media:**  
Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:  
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

### OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.  
Short press: select the preset radio station.  
Long press: preset a radio station.



### Radio:

Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.

### Media:

Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.  
Fast scroll in a list.



### Radio:

Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.

Select previous/next MP3 folder.

### Media:

Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.  
Fast scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.  
Go up one level (menu or folder).

### MENU

Access to the main menu.

### TA

Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).  
Long press: select type of announcement.

### BAND

Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



### Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.



Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

### Media:

Select the previous/next track.  
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

**LIST** **Radio:**  
Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

**Media:**

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

**SRC / /** **Other than telephone call:**  
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

**In the event of a telephone call:**

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

**During a telephone call:**

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

**OK** Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

## Steering mounted controls – Type 2



**MENU** Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.

**SRC / /** **Other than telephone call:**

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

**In the event of a telephone call:**

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

**During a telephone call:**

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

**VOICE** Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

**LIST** **Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

**Media:**

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



**Radio:**

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

**Media:**

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.



**"Connections":** Manage connections, search for devices.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



**"Personalisation-configuration":**

Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.

**LIST**

Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.

To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

**MENU** Press the "MENU" button.

 Move from one menu to another.

**OK** Enter a menu.

## RDS

 The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Menus

Depending on version.



**"Multimedia":** Media settings, Radio settings.



**"Telephone":** Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



**"Trip computer":**



**"Maintenance":** Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

## Radio

### Selecting a station

**SRC /** Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

**BAND** Press this button to select a waveband (FM/AM/DAB).

 If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

**!** The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Short procedure

In "Radio" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

## Long procedure

**MENU** Press the **MENU** button.

 Select "Audio functions".

**OK** Press **OK**.

 Select the "FM waveband preferences" function.

**OK** Press **OK**.

 Select "Frequency tracking (RDS)".

**OK** Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

## Playing TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that broadcasts this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

**!** Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

**TA** Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

## Playing INFO messages

**i** The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

**TA** Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

 Select or deselect categories.

**OK** Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

## Displaying TEXT INFOS

**i** Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

**OK** When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ Select "RadioText (TXT) display" and confirm **OK** to save.  
▼

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

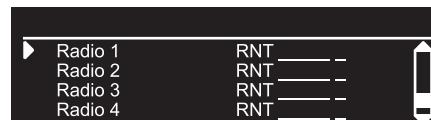
**i** If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



- 1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- 2 Display of the name of the current station.

- 3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6. Short press: select the preset radio station.  
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- 4 Display the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".
- 5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.
- 6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

**i** When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



**LIST** Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

## Terrestrial digital radio

**i** Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

**BAND** Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

**↔** Change of station within the same "multiplex/ensemble".

▲ Starting of a search for the previous/next "multiplex/ensemble".  
▼

**TA** Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

**i** When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.  
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB/FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

## DAB/FM station tracking

**i** "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB/FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).

When the "DAB/FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

**i** If "DAB/FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

**MENU** Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶ Select "Multimedia" and confirm.

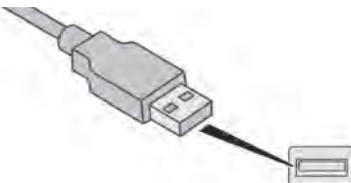
▲ Select "DAB/FM auto tracking" and confirm.

**!** If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("DAB/FM" option struck out), or if "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not enabled, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

## Media

### USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

**i** When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.

## Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal:** the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random:** the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media:** all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.

- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

**OK** Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.  
▼

**OK** Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

## Choosing a track to play

◀▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track.

▲ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next folder.  
▼

## File classification

**LIST** Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Select by "Folder"/"Artist"/"Genre"/"Playlist". Depending on availability and type of device used.

**OK** Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

## Playing files

**LIST** Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

**OK** Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list.  
Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.



▲ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next "Folder"/"Artist"/"Genre"/"Playlist"\*\* in the list.

\* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack auxiliary socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

**SRC /** Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "AUX".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

**!** Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB socket at the same time.

## CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

**!** External CD players connected via the USB socket are not recognised by the system.

**SRC / /** To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "CD".

**◀▶** Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

**LIST** Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

**◀▶** Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

## Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

**!** On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.

However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

The folder structure is not observed during playback.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

**SRC / /** To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "CD".

**▲** Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.  
**▼**

**◀▶** Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

**LIST** Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

**◀▶** Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.  
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

**SRC / /** Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE**.  
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen, if the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

No other file types ("mp"4, etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB socket, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps. No other file types ("mp"4, etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. " ?; ü) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

! It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

! Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.

Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

## Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

## Procedure from the system

**MENU** Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

▲ Select "**Search for a device**".  
▼

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

## Completing the pairing



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

## Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**". Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.



Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

## Managing connections

**i** The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

**MENU** Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶ Select "**Connections**".

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

▲ Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

**Bluetooth icon** Indicates that a device is connected.

**i** A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.



Confirm with **OK**.



- **"Connect telephone"/"Disconnect telephone"**: to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- **"Connect media player"/"Disconnect media player"**: to connect/disconnect streaming only.
- **"Connect telephone + media player"/"Disconnect telephone + media player"**: to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- **"Delete connection"**: to delete the pairing.

**i** When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

Or

Select "Calls list".

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC//** Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

**◀▶** Select the "YES" tab in the screen using the buttons.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC//** Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

## Ending a call

In the "Telephone" menu.

Select "End call".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

**SRC//** During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

## Making a call

In the "Telephone" menu.

Select "Call".

Select "Dial".

Or

Select "Directory".

**i** The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

**i** With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

## Managing calls

**OK** During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

### End call

 In the contextual menu, select "Hang up" to end the call.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

### Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

 In the contextual menu:  
 - select "Micro OFF" to switch off the microphone.  
 - deselect "Micro OFF" to switch the microphone on.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

## Telephone mode

 In the contextual menu:  
 - select "Telephone mode" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).  
 - deselect "Telephone mode" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone). In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

## Interactive voice response

 From the contextual menu, select "DTMF tones" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

## Consultation call

 From the contextual menu, select "Switch" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

## Directory

 To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

 Select "Directory" to see the list of contacts.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

**MENU** To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

## Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.



**i** Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.</p>	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	<p>In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.</p>	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Media" section.</li> <li>- Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.</li> </ul>
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB socket.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system <b>and</b> of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

## PEUGEOT Connect Radio



## Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
(Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	10
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.

Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiances, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



#### Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

#### Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



#### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.

#### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

## Steering mounted controls – Type 2



#### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).



Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



**SRC** **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

## LIST

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

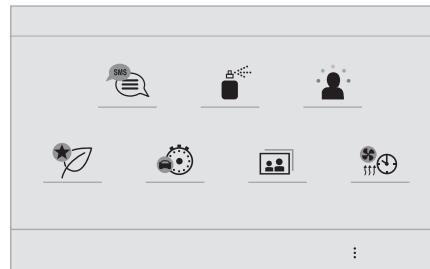
## Menus

## Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Access configurable equipment.

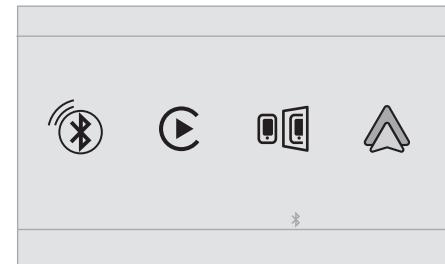


## Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

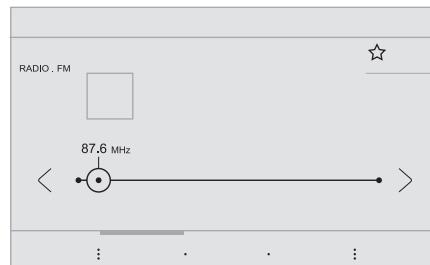


## Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

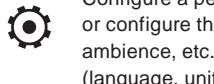


Select an audio source or radio station.

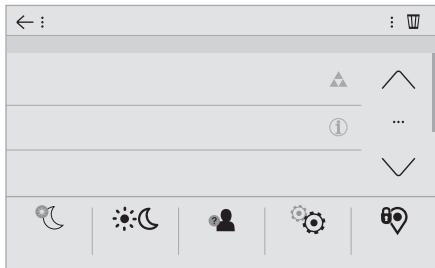


## Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

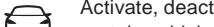


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



## Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

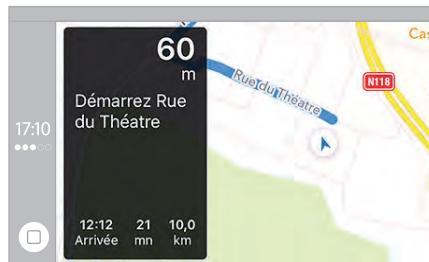


## Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

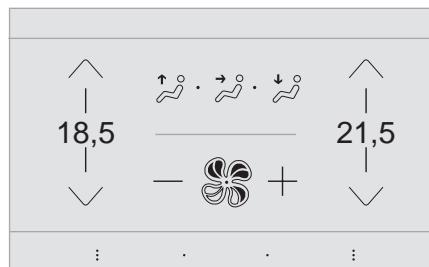


## Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



## Applications

### Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press **"Photos"**.



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

## Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket to delete the message.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.

**MHz**

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

### Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

 Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "Preset".

 Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".

 Press in the grey zone to confirm.

 The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

 The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Activate/Deactivate "**News**".

 Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

 The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".

 Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Audio settings

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Audio settings".



Select the "Tone" or "Balance" or "Sound" or "Voice" or "Ringtones" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the "Tone" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

In the "Balance" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

In the "Sound" tab, activate or deactivate "Volume linked to speed", "Auxiliary input" and "Touch tones".



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

**i** Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality reception.

The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Band" to select the "DAB band".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## FM-DAB Tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "FM-DAB Tracking".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

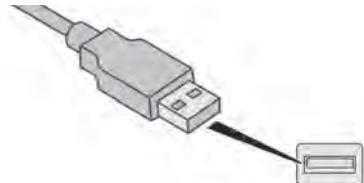


If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"SOURCES"** button.

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types ("mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard. Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?; ü) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB socket(s) compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.  
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**  
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

**OK** During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.  
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper banner.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



**N** You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

## Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "Telephone" to display the primary page.



Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "Android Auto" function.

**OK** During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

## Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "Telephone" to display the primary page.

Press the "TEL" button to display the secondary page.



Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper banner.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

## Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

## Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "Bluetooth search".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

## To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.  
All three profiles may connect by default.

**!** The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

**i** The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.  
Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "End call".

## Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Parking the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "Call" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "Call".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Ring volume" to display the volume bar.

 Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

## Settings

### Setting profiles

 As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Activate or deactivate:

- "No sharing (data, vehicle position)".
- "Data sharing only"
- "Sharing data and the vehicle position"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

## PEUGEOT Connect Nav



## GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

### Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	13
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	24
Media	25
Telephone	27
Settings	31
Frequently asked questions	33

**i** The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

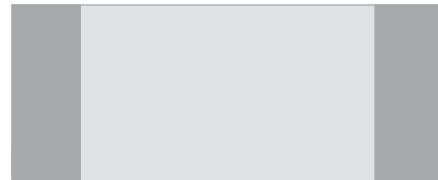
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

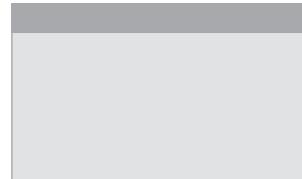
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



Certain information is displayed permanently in the side banners or in the upper banner of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD Player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls



### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



**SRC** **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.



**LIST**

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

## Menus

### Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.  
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



### Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.

Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



### Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



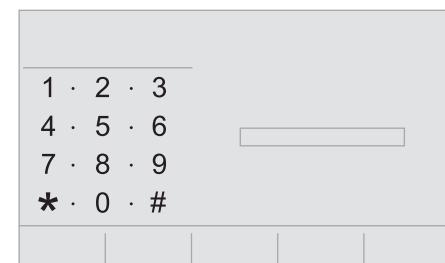
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

### Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

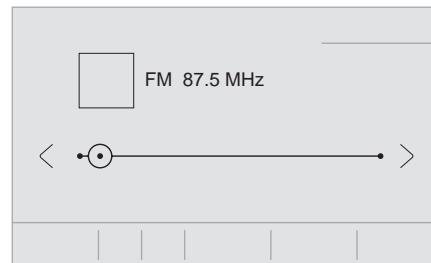


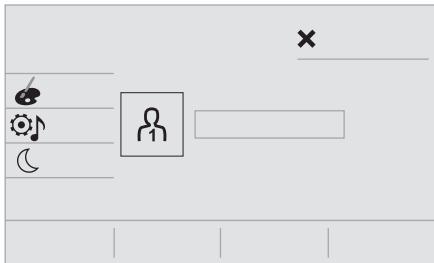
### Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).





## Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



## Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



## Voice commands

### Steering mounted controls



#### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

**!** To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- **speak natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

## First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address 11 Regent street, London"**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist Madonna"**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller"**

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/... The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

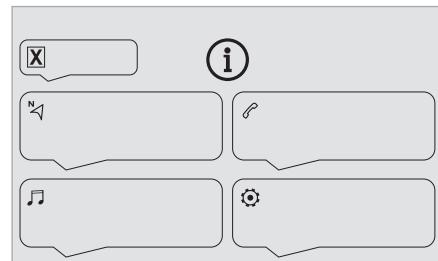
## Information – Using the system



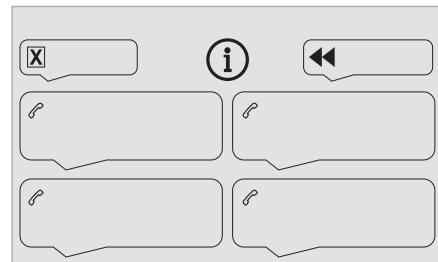
Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice"/"beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



When the voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and allowing you to interact with the system by voice.



Upon selecting a menu item you have a choice of commands.



## Global voice commands

 These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
	 "There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". "
	 Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
<b>Set dialogue mode as novice/beginner – expert</b>	
<b>Select user 1&gt;Select profile John</b>	
<b>Increase temperature</b>	
<b>Decrease temperature</b>	

## "Navigation" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
	
<b>Navigate home</b>	To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
<b>Navigate to work</b>	
<b>Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club</b>	
<b>Navigate to contact, John Miller</b>	
<b>Navigate to address 11 Regent street, London</b>	To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
<b>Tell me the remaining distance</b>	You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".
<b>Tell me the remaining time</b>	
<b>Tell me the arrival time</b>	
<b>Stop route guidance</b>	

<b>Show POI 'hotel' at the destination</b>	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
<b>Show nearby POI "nearby petrol station"</b>	
<b>Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London</b>	To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".
<b>Navigate to POI petrol station along the route</b>	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
	
<b>Turn on source, radio – Bluetooth Streaming - ...</b>	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Bluetooth Streaming", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
<b>Tune to channel BBC Radio 2</b>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
<b>Tune to 98.5 FM</b>	
<b>Tune to preset number five</b>	
<b>What's playing?</b>	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
<b>Play song Hey Jude</b>	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller".
<b>Play artist Madonna</b>	
<b>Play album Thriller</b>	

**i** Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
	
<b>Call David Miller*</b>	
<b>Call voicemail*</b>	
<b>Display calls*</b>	<p>To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a message, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on messages, you can say "help with messages". To choose a contact, say for example "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

## "Text message" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

**i** The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.

Dictate your text taking care to make a short pause between each word.

At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

 <b>Voice commands</b>	 <b>Help messages</b>
<b>Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late</b>	<p>You can send a quick message by specifying the name of the recipient. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
<b>Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving</b>  <b>Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me</b>	<p>Please say "call" or "send message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
<b>Listen to most recent message*</b>	<p>To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a message, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". You'll find the list of quick messages in the telephone menu.</p>

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

**i** The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

# Navigation

## Choice of a destination

### To a new destination

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Enter address**".

 Select the "**Country**".

 Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

 Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or

 Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

 Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

 Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

 In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

 Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

### To a recent destination

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

 Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

 Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

### To "My home" or "My work"

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

 Select "**My home**".

Or

 Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

### To a contact

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "My destinations".

Select the "Contact" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

## To Points of Interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "MENU" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "Points of interest".



Select the "Travel", or "Leisure" or "Commercial" or "Public" or "Geographic" tab.

Or



Select "Search" to enter the name and address of a POI.

**OK** Press "OK" to start calculation of the route.

## To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.



A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

## To GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.



Press this button to display the world map.

Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:  
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.  
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "Longitude" using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

**i** The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

### Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

### Network connection provided by the user



**i** For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

## Connected navigation connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

**Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

### Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance call" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

### Network connection provided by the user

#### USB connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

#### Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

**Wi-Fi connection**

Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

**i** This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "Notifications".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".



Press "**OK**" to start the connection.



Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

**i** The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

**Settings specific to connected navigation**

With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".

## Select "Map".

Activate or deactivate:

- "Allow declaration of danger zones".
- "Guidance to final destination on foot"
- "Display recommended speed"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

## Select "Alerts".

Activate or deactivate "Advise of car parks nearby".

Activate or deactivate "Filling station alert".

Activate or deactivate "Risk areas alert".

 Next, select this button.

Activate: "Safety zones alert"

Activate: "Give an audible warning"

Activate or deactivate "Advise of POI 1 nearby".

Activate or deactivate "Advise of POI 2 nearby".

 For access to connected navigation, you must select the option: "Authorise sending information" in "Settings".

 You can access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper banner.

 The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Declaration of "Danger zones"

 To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should tick the option: "Allow declaration of danger zones".

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

 Press the "Declare a new danger zone" button located in the side banners or the upper banner of the touch screen (depending on equipment).



Select the "Type" option to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the "Speed" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "OK" to save and distribute the information.

## Authorising sending information



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "System settings"/"System administration".



Select the "Privacy mode" tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- "No sharing (data, vehicle position)".
- "Data sharing only"
- "Sharing data and the vehicle position"

## "Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**"/"**System administration**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.  
The update procedure can also be found on the website.



Once you have downloaded the updates, the installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

## Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Applications

### USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

### Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

### CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

 The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

Available depending on the country of sale.



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

 The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

 As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

 The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper banner.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Android Auto**" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper banner.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Vehicle Apps

 Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle Apps**" to display the applications home page.

## Internet Browser

 Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.

 Select your country of residence.

**OK** Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

**i** Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

## Bluetooth connection®

**!** As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

## Procedure from the telephone

 Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

## Procedure from the system

 Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".

The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

 The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".



Press "**OK**" to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

## Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

## Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

# Radio

## Selecting a station

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

 Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

 Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

 Enter the values using the virtual keypad.  
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

 Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.  
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.  
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Changing waveband

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band..." displayed at the top right of the screen.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

 Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

 RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

 The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

 The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band..." at the top right of the screen to display the **DAB** waveband.

## DAB-FM auto tracking

 "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

 Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

## OK

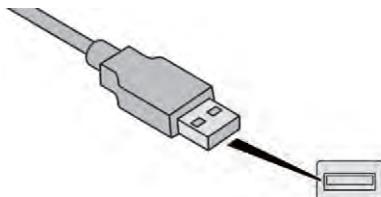
Press "OK".

**i** If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

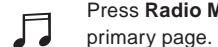
First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

## CD player

Depending on equipment  
Insert the CD in the player.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".  
Choose the source.

## Watching a video

**!** For safety reasons and because of required sustained attention of the driver, viewing a video is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary** and the ignition is switched on; as soon as movement resumes, the video stops.

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

 Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

 Select **Video** to start the video.

 To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

 Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

 The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types ("mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?; ù) in order to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment). In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

 Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone

 Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

 To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

**i** Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "OK" to confirm.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

## To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "OK" to confirm.

**!** The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

**!** The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

**i** The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

 The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "All" or "Received" or "Sent" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

 Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

## Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Press "Play" to start playing the message.



Access to "Email" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

## Settings

### Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "Audio settings".

Select "Ambience".

Or

"Distribution".

Or

"Sound".

Or

"Voice".

Or

"Ringtone".



Press "OK" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source.

Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

### Setting profiles



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket. Select the photograph.



Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.



Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

 The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

**00.0** Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

 Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.

 Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**"/"**System administration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

 Resetting the system to "Factory Settings" activates English by default, as well as Fahrenheit degrees, and turns off daylight saving (summer) time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

## Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date



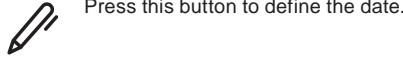
Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

**i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

## Setting the time

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

 Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

 Press this button to define the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

**!** As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

 Select "**Colour schemes**".

 Select a colour scheme in the list then press "OK" to confirm.

**i** Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

## Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "MEDIA" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass, Treble, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).



**A**

ABS	94
Accessories	91, 125
Access to the 3rd row	61
Access to the spare wheel	200
Active Lane Departure Warning System	20, 21, 158
Active Safety Brake	18, 155-157
AdBlue®	23, 31, 191-192
Additive, Diesel	21, 190
Adjusting headlamp beam height	87
Adjusting head restraints	62
Adjusting seats	56, 61
Adjusting the air distribution	71-72
Adjusting the air flow	71-72
Adjusting the date	36, 17, 32
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel	53
Adjusting the lumbar support	56
Adjusting the temperature	71-72
Adjusting the time	36, 17, 33
Advanced Grip Control	97-98
Advice on driving	120-121
Airbags	19, 103, 105, 107
Airbags, curtain	105, 108
Airbags, front	104-105, 107-108
Airbags, lateral	104-105
Air conditioning	71, 72, 75
Air conditioning, automatic	79
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic	71-72
Air conditioning, electronic (with display screen)	75
Air conditioning, manual	70-71, 74, 79
Air intake	71-73
Alarm	49, 51
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	94
Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	94
Anti-theft/Immobiliser	126
Apple CarPlay connection	12, 18
Armrest	57
Armrest, front	63

**B**

Battery	184, 189, 211-214
Battery, 12 V	211
Battery, charging	213
Battery, remote control	44-45, 78
Blind spot detection	161, 163
BlueHDI	31, 195
Bluetooth (hands-free)	10-11, 13-14, 27-28
Bluetooth (telephone)	13-15, 27-28
Bonnet	185-186
Boot lid	40, 43
Brake discs	190-191
Brake lamps	207
Brakes	14, 190-191
Braking, automatic emergency	18, 155-157
Braking, emergency	129
Braking assistance system	94
Brightness	16
Bulbs	204
Bulbs (changing)	203-205
Bulbs (changing, type)	204

**C**

Cable, audio	25
Cable, Jack	25
Cap, fuel filler	179-180
Capacity, fuel tank	179-180
CD	9, 9, 25
CD, MP3	9, 9, 25
Central locking	38, 40
Changing a bulb	203-207
Changing a fuse	209-211
Changing a wheel	195-196, 199
Changing a wiper blade	88-89

**D**

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio	6-7, 8, 24
Date (setting)	36, 17, 32
Daytime running lamps	81, 83, 206
Daytime running lamps, LED	206
Deactivating the passenger airbag	104, 107-108
Deactivation of DSC (ESC)	95
Deadlocking	41
Defrosting	54, 74
Demisting	74
Demisting, rear	53, 75
Demisting, rear screen	53, 75
Diesel	220-223
Dimensions	216
Dipstick	30, 187-188
Direction indicators	82-83, 206, 207
Display screen, instrument panel	29, 135
Distance Alert	18, 155-156
Doors, side-hinged	40-41
Driver's attention warning	164
Driving abroad	82
Dynamic stability control (DSC)	20, 94-98

**E**

Earth point, remote	186
Economy mode	184
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)	94
Electronic stability control (ESC)	25, 94, 96-98
Emergency braking assistance (EBA)	94
Emergency call	92-93
Emissions control system, SCR	191
Energy economy mode	184
Engine	218-223
Engine, Diesel	18, 178, 195, 220-223
Engine, petrol	178, 186, 218-219
Engine compartment	186
Engines	217-223
Engine self-diagnosis	17

**F**

Environment	44, 78
ESC (electronic stability control)	94
Extended traffic sign recognition	141

**F**

Fatigue detection	164
Filling the AdBlue® tank	192
Filling the fuel tank	178-180
Filter, air	189
Filter, Diesel fuel	186
Filter, oil	189
Filter, particle	19, 189-190
Filter, passenger compartment	189
Fitting a wheel	201-203
Fitting roof bars	184-185
Fittings, interior	63, 67
Flap, fuel filler	179-180
Foglamp, rear	25, 81, 207
Foglamps, front	81, 86-87, 207
Foglamps, rear	81
Folding the rear seats	58-60
Frequency (radio)	23-24
Fuel	178
Fuel tank	179
Fusebox, engine compartment	211
Fuses	209-211

**G**

Gauge, fuel	179-180
Gearbox, automatic	121, 130-137, 190
Gearbox, electronic	135-137
Gearbox, manual	130-131, 135-137, 190
Gear lever, automatic gearbox	131-135
Gear lever, manual gearbox	130-131
Gear shift indicator	135
Glove box	63
G.P.S.	14

**H**

Hazard warning lamps	70, 93
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation	93
Headlamp adjustment	87
Headlamp beam height	87
Headlamps, automatic dipping	27, 84-86, 163
Headlamps, automatic illumination	83-84
Headlamps, dipped beam	27, 81, 205
Headlamps, halogen	204
Headlamps, main beam	27, 81, 206
Head restraints	57
Head restraints, front	62
Head restraints, rear	58-59
Heating	70-71, 75-79
Heating, additional	49, 76-78
Heating, programmable	49, 76-78
Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC)	26, 98-100
Hill start assist	130
Horn	93

**I**

Identification, vehicle	224
Ignition	124-125, 29
Ignition on	125
Immobiliser, electronic	42, 45, 126
Indicator, AdBlue® range	31
Indicator, coolant temperature	28-30
Indicator, engine oil level	30
Indicator lamps, operation	15-16, 81
Indicator lamps, status	15
Indicators, direction	82
Inflating tyres	190
Inflating tyres (using the kit)	196-198
Instrument panel	11
Internet browser	21
ISOFIX	115-116

---

Jack	199, 25
Jump starting	212

---

Key	37, 40, 45
Key, electronic	37, 125-126
Keyless Entry and Starting	37-40, 42, 45-46, 123, 125
Key with remote control	37, 40, 42
Kit, hands-free	10-11, 13-14, 27-28
Kit, temporary puncture repair	195-198

---

Labels	4, 61
Labels, identification	224
Lamps, front	205-207
Lamps, parking	83
Lamps, rear	207
LEDs – Light-emitting diodes	83, 204
Level, brake fluid	188
Level, Diesel additive	189-190
Level, engine coolant	28-30, 188
Level, engine oil	30, 187-188
Level, screenwash fluid	88, 188
Levels and checks	186-188
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs	83, 204
Lighting	81
Lighting, cornering	86-87
Lighting, guide-me home	84
Lighting, welcome	84
Loading	184
Load reduction mode	184
Locating your vehicle	42
Locking	37, 40, 45
Locking from the inside	46
Low fuel level	179-180
Lumbar	56

---

Markings, identification	224
Mat	63, 123
Memorising a speed	154-155
Menu	12
Menu, main	4
Menus (audio)	4-5, 4-5
Messages	30
Messages, quick	30
Mirror, child surveillance	54
Mirror, rear view	54
Mirrors, door	53-54, 75, 161, 163
Misfuel prevention	180
Mountings, ISOFIX	114, 116
MP3 CD	9

---

Net	69-70
Net, high load retaining	68
Number plate lamps	208

---

Obstacle detection	165
Oil, engine	187-188
Oil change	187-188
Oil consumption	187-188
Opening the bonnet	185-186
Opening the boot	37
Opening the doors	37
Opening the fuel filler flap	179

---

M	224
Pads, brake	190-191
Paint colour code	224
Park Assist	170
Parking brake	126, 190-191
Parking brake, electric	16, 20, 24-25, 126-129
Parking sensors, audible and visual	165
Parking sensors, front	166
Parking sensors, rear	165
Petrol	218-219
PEUGEOT Connect Nav	1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio	1
Plates, identification	224
Player, Apple®	10, 9, 26
Player, MP3 CD	9, 25
Player, USB	7, 9, 25
Power steering	15
Pre-heater, Diesel	18
Pressures, tyres	190, 199, 203, 224
Pre-tensioning seat belts	102-103
Priming the fuel system	195
Profiles	16, 31
Protecting children	104, 106-108, 111, 113, 115-118
Puncture	196-199

---

R	25
Radio	4-5, 6-7, 9, 23, 25
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	6, 8, 24
Range, AdBlue	31-32
RDS	7, 23-24
Rear screen, demisting	75
Recharging the battery	213
Recirculation, air	71-73
Reduction of electrical load	184
Regeneration of the particle filter	190
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system	176

Reinitialising the remote control .....	44
Reminder, key in ignition .....	124
Reminder, lighting on .....	82
Remote control .....	37-38, 40, 42, 45-46, 126
Removing a wheel .....	201-203
Removing the mat .....	63
Replacing bulbs .....	203-205
Replacing fuses .....	209-211
Replacing the air filter .....	189
Replacing the oil filter .....	189
Replacing the cabin filter .....	189
Reservoir, screenwash .....	188
Resetting the service indicator .....	28
Resetting the trip recorder .....	29
Reversing camera .....	168
Reversing lamps .....	207
Roof .....	63
Roof bars .....	184-185
Running out of fuel (Diesel) .....	195

**S**

Safety, children .....	104, 106-108, 111, 113, 115-118
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) .....	190
Screen, instrument panel .....	29
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) .....	4
Screen menu map .....	12
Screenwash, front .....	88
Screenwash, rear .....	88
Seat, rear bench .....	58, 61
Seat belts .....	15, 100-103, 111
Seats, front .....	56-57, 61
Seats, heated .....	58
Seats, rear .....	55, 58-61
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) .....	191
Serial number, vehicle .....	224
Service indicator .....	28
Servicing .....	28
Settings, equipment .....	29

**T**

Tables of fuses .....	209-211
Tank, fuel .....	179-180
Telephone .....	66, 10-11, 13, 13-15, 27-30
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition .....	14
Temperature, coolant .....	15, 28-30
Textured Paint .....	194
Three flashes (direction indicators) .....	82
Time (setting) .....	36, 17, 33
TMC (Traffic info) .....	15
Tools .....	195
Tool kit .....	195-196
Total distance recorder .....	29
Touch screen .....	1, 1
Towing device .....	96-97, 120-121, 181-182
Towed loads .....	217
Towing another vehicle .....	214-215
Towing eye .....	214
Traction control (ASR) .....	20, 94-98
Traffic information (TA) .....	5
Traffic information (TMC) .....	15
Trailer .....	96-97, 120-121, 181
Trailer stability assist (TSA) .....	96-97
Trajectory control systems .....	94
Triangle, warning .....	70
Trip computer .....	34-35
Trip distance recorder .....	29
Type of bulbs .....	204
Tyres .....	190
Tyre under-inflation detection .....	18, 175-176, 199

**U**

Under-inflation (detection) .....	175
Unlocking .....	37-39
Unlocking from the inside .....	46
Updating the date .....	36, 17, 32
Updating the time .....	36, 17, 33
USB .....	7, 9, 25

---

**V**

Ventilation ..... 70-71, 73, 75-79  
Visiopark 1 ..... 168  
Voice commands ..... 5-8, 10-12

---

**W**

Warning and indicator lamps ..... 13  
Warning lamp, airbag ..... 19  
Warning lamp, braking system ..... 14  
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater ..... 18  
Warning lamp, low fuel level ..... 17  
Warning lamp, parking brake ..... 14  
Warning lamp, seat belts ..... 101-102  
Warning lamp, Service ..... 24  
Washer jets, heated ..... 74-75  
Weights ..... 217  
Welcome lighting ..... 42  
Wheel, spare ..... 190, 195-196, 199-200, 203  
Wheel trim ..... 203  
Window controls ..... 51  
Windows, rear doors ..... 52  
Windscreen, heated ..... 74-75  
Wiper, rear ..... 88  
Wiper blades (changing) ..... 88-89  
Wipers ..... 26-27, 87, 89-90  
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive ..... 88-90







Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.



**PEUGEOT**

**CONDUENT** 

 **HDconcept**  **xerox** 

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON  
<http://www.peugeot.com>

Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

Printed in the EU

Anglais

04-18



[www.peugeot.com](http://www.peugeot.com)

Downloaded from [thelostmanual.org](http://thelostmanual.org)



**ANG. 18K9P.0040**